

Explorers' Guide '81

Canada's Arctic



POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM

BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY

04187

NORTHWEST TERRITORIES

APPROXIMATE SCALE OF MILES



Contents

Messages to Readers	2
Things to Know (immigration laws, visitor centres, vehicle insurance, pets, health care, financial services, metric conversion, firearms, liquor outlets and laws, CB radios, scientific research, wilderness travel, information for pilots, key statistics)	3
Climate (temperature chart, hours of sunlight)	6
Community Sketches (historical information, air services, accommodation, meals, entertainment, recreation, medical and police facilities)	8
Coming Events (March-October, 1981)	16
Geography and Wildlife (physical features, plant life, minerals, animals)	18
History (archaeology, historic sites, museums)	20
Arts and Crafts (various types)	22
Economy (resources and industries)	24
Driving North (distance charts, ferry service, road conditions, service stations, driving tips)	26
Highway Holidays (campgrounds, points of interest, picnic sites, campgrounds off the highway system)	28
The Great Outdoors (camping and canoeing information)	32
National Parks (Nahanni, Wood Buffalo and Auyuittuq)	34
Angling and Hunting (tips, northern species, regulations, hunting guides and outfitters)	38
Tours (N.W.T. tours and those combining N.W.T. points with Yukon, Western Canada, and Alaska; prices, departures, local tours, and sightseeing buses)	42
Hotels and Motels (listed by community; prices, capacities, meal facilities)	46
Lodges and Camps (rates, seasons, booking addresses, activities)	50
Outfitters and Naturalist Facilities (escorted trips for game viewing, fishing, canoeing, boat cruises, horseback riding; prices)	54
Transportation (air routes, scheduled carriers, charter carriers, charter rates, scheduled buses, vehicle and boat rentals)	58
Read About Us (travel information and maps, northern newspapers and magazines, libraries, various books on the North)	62

*(A special **Travel Industry Edition** of this Guide is available to travel agents and tour operators on request.)*



A MESSAGE FROM THE Commissioner

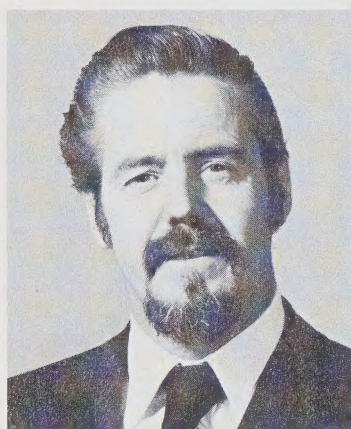
Where in the world can a traveller still experience wilderness as it really used to be? Come to the Northwest Territories. We Northerners would like to show you our home. Come and share our unspoiled wilderness or the friendliness of today's communities.

We offer to show you the wilderness but we also can show you modern facilities that care for visitors — air routes connect almost all our communities; there are over 40 hotels and a similar number of

lodges; our highway system stretches over 2,000 km (1,300 miles) through subarctic scenery.

Please have a look at our north through this Explorers' Guide and use it to plan your holiday discovery of Canada's Arctic. Northerners are waiting to welcome you.

John H. Parker
Commissioner



A MESSAGE FROM THE Minister

When people come to explore Canada's Arctic most look forward to unspoiled scenery, wildlife, fishing and midnight sun. But don't forget about the Northerners. Although there are only 45,000 of us, we do like to give visitors a big welcome.

Whether visiting our bustling capital of Yellowknife or strolling through a small northern settlement, you will be welcome to move about and experience our frontier lifestyle. Join in at a Northern celebration; fly sky-high on a blanket toss at the Northern Games; try to build an igloo during Toonik Tyme in Frobisher Bay or watch the dog teams run for the money at Yellowknife's Caribou Carnival.

As a Department, we do our best to foster a growing involvement between

northern people and visitors; as a guest you can play a part in this process but please, respect local customs when you visit our Northern communities. Language difficulties might occasionally crop up since the majority of Northerners are native people: Dene (Indian), Inuit (Eskimo), or Metis (of mixed ancestry). But of course experiences with different cultures help to make a holiday memorable.

We hope that this will be the year for you to share some Northern hospitality.

Tom Butters
Minister of Economic Development
and Tourism

A NOTE TO Readers

The Explorers' Guide is prepared annually by TravelArctic, the tourism organization of the Government of the Northwest Territories. Free copies are available to any person interested in travelling to the Northwest Territories from TravelArctic. (There is also a special **Travel Industry Supplement** to the Guide available to travel agents and tour operators. Write to TravelArctic in Yellowknife.)

Rates and charges listed are correct at time of publication (January, 1981); however, these are subject to change without notice by the management of the companies listed. TravelArctic and the Government of the Northwest Territories assume no responsibility for the accuracy of rates listed in this publication. All

travellers should confirm rates and reservations through their travel agent or with the company concerned.

Please note that all prices are in Canadian dollars. However, some establishments quote their prices in Canadian and United States dollars and exchange rates can affect the price in Canadian dollars.

We welcome your suggestions or comments on this publication or tourist attractions and services in the N.W.T. If you would like further information please do not hesitate to contact us:

TravelArctic
Yellowknife, N.W.T.
Canada X1A 2L9



EXPLORE
CANADA'S
ARCTIC

Things to Know



Slave River Rapids.

Who May Visit Us?

Anybody, of course. Citizens and legal residents of the United States do not need passports or visas to enter Canada as visitors. But it's a good idea to carry some identification — such as birth, baptismal, voter's or naturalization certificate — which shows your citizenship, just in case you're asked for it when leaving or re-entering the U.S. With certain exceptions, visitors who enter Canada from a country other than the U.S., or outside the Commonwealth, require a Canadian non-immigrant visa issued by Canadian immigration offices, embassies and consulates. Any questions about entry to Canada may be addressed to: **Canada Immigration Division, Canada Employment and Immigration Centre, Ottawa, Ont. K1A 0J9.**

Canada Travel Information

If you require information about other parts of Canada to visit on your way to the N.W.T., please contact: **Canadian Government Office of Tourism, Ottawa, Canada, K1A 0H6.**

Visitor Centres

Chambers of commerce in the N.W.T. are located at Norman Wells, Hay River, Inuvik, Fort Smith, Fort Simpson and Yellowknife. Inquiries should be directed

to "The President" of each. Chambers offer visitor information centres at Hay River and Yellowknife, open from late May to early September. A summer visitor centre operates next to the craft shop in Fort Simpson. The Town of Fort Smith has a June-September visitor information centre at Conibear Park, while Parks Canada has year-round centres at Fort Smith (for Wood Buffalo National Park) and Fort Simpson (for Nahanni National Park). And, of course, don't overlook the Government of the N.W.T. Visitor Information Centres at the 60th parallel on Highway 1 and south of Fort McPherson on the Dempster Highway. They're open May-September. The TravelArctic information centre on 50th street in downtown Yellowknife is open year-round.

Wilderness Travel

The Royal Canadian Mounted Police in co-operation with TravelArctic have instituted a voluntary travel registration program for people venturing into Northwest Territories wilderness areas. This free service has been established for the protection of the travelling public. Registration can mean the difference between life and death in the event of an emergency. It is also useful in relaying urgent messages.

Please register with the RCMP detachment nearest to your point of departure.

When you complete or abandon your trip, please advise the RCMP that you have done so. RCMP detachments are located in most communities in the Northwest Territories.

Wilderness travellers are reminded that licences are required for hunting and fishing. Expeditions that profess to "live off the land" must follow the new Wildlife Ordinance and the N.W.T. Fishery Regulations. Please obtain all licences **before leaving** your Northwest Territories departure point.

Liquor Supplies

An eligible person may personally import into the N.W.T. 1.14L (40 oz.) of liquor or wine, or one dozen bottles of beer, without an import permit.

Liquor stores, or agencies carrying beer, wine and liquor, are located at Hay River, Pine Point, Fort Smith, Yellowknife, Fort Simpson, Norman Wells and Inuvik. The Frobisher Bay liquor store operates as a mail-order facility and a supplier to local outlets; liquor cannot be purchased by individuals at the store. Bottles of liquor or beer cannot be bought for take-out at Frobisher Bay bars. A "beer only" agency is located at Cambridge Bay. At many hotels and lodges you can buy liquor for consumption on the premises. Persons 19 years and older are eligible to buy and consume liquor.

Liquor Restrictions

Some communities have voted to prohibit or ration the sale of alcoholic beverages.

Community plebiscites in the following communities have led to prohibition of possession of alcoholic beverages: Fort Franklin, Hall Beach, Lac La Martre, Rae-Edzo, Repulse Bay, Coral Harbour, Pangnirtung, Fort Norman, Gjoa Haven, Snowdrift, Sanikiluaq, Fort Good Hope, Eskimo Point, Rae Lakes, Lake Harbour, Pelly Bay. Where alcohol is prohibited, the restricted area extends in a circle with a radius of 25 km (15 miles) around the community. No liquor may be possessed in this area. Bona fide travellers passing through the Rae-Edzo area on Highway 3 (Yellowknife Highway) may have sealed alcohol in their luggage. (**Note:** Additional communities are slated to have liquor plebiscites in 1981. TravelArctic will have the details.)

Bar Hours

Maximum hours of operation of businesses that serve alcoholic beverages in the N.W.T. are: **dining lounges**, 10 a.m.-1 a.m., seven days a week; **cocktail lounges**, 10 a.m.-1 a.m. Monday-Friday, midnight Saturday night; **cabarets**, 12 noon-1 a.m., Monday-Thursday, 12 noon-2 a.m., Friday-Saturday.

Vehicles and Insurance

The entry of vehicles and trailers into Canada for touring purposes is usually a quick, routine matter. Any necessary permits are issued at the port of entry. If you've rented a vehicle or trailer, make sure you bring along a copy of the rental contract which stipulates you have permission to use it in Canada.

U.S. motorists planning to travel in Canada are advised to obtain a Canadian Non-resident Interprovince Motor Vehicle Liability Insurance Card available only in the U.S. Contact your local agent. (See Driving North section for information on N.W.T. highways and gravel-driving tips.)

Licence Plates

The distinctive N.W.T. polar bear licence plates are available for sale at \$5.00 each from the Department of Justice and Public Services, Government of the N.W.T. X1A 2L9. Cheques should be made payable to the Government of the N.W.T.

Can Your Pet Come?

Dogs and cats accompanying their owners from the U.S. must have a current rabies vaccination certificate. Owners from other countries who wish to bring their pets with them should write: **Health of Animals Branch, Canada Department of Agriculture, SBI Building, 2323 Riverside Drive, Ottawa, Ont. K1A 0Y9.**

Firearms, Fishing Tackle

A visitor does not require a federal permit to possess rifles, shotguns or fishing tackle in Canada. A visitor from outside Canada must provide Canada Customs at the point of entry with a description and serial numbers of firearms because they must be cleared through customs when going back home. Customs clearance does not give the right to hunt and fish. The appropriate licences must be purchased. Two hundred rounds of ammunition per person are admitted duty free.

Only sporting weapons are allowed into Canada. Revolvers, pistols and automatic weapons are prohibited.

It is not practical for visitors from outside Canada to purchase firearms in Canada because of the time required to process and obtain a Firearms Acquisition Cer-



tificate from the Royal Canadian Mounted Police.

Visitors from outside Canada cannot dispose of any goods brought into Canada unless the appropriate duty has been paid. If it's your intention to leave the goods in Canada — either selling them or giving them away — please notify the Canada Customs agent when entering the country.

Hospital & Medical Services

Hospitals in the N.W.T. are located at Hay River, Fort Simpson, Fort Smith, Yellowknife, Inuvik and Frobisher Bay. Most smaller communities have limited services available through nursing stations. Wise travellers will check with their hospital and medical service plans to ensure they will be covered in the N.W.T. If you are taking medicine prescribed by your doctor, you should bring a copy of the prescription in case you need to have it renewed by a physician in Canada. For further information and insurance details,

contact your travel agent, insurance agent or Canadian Government Office of Tourism.

Financial Services

Chartered banks are located at Fort McPherson, Fort Simpson, Fort Smith, Frobisher Bay, Hay River, Inuvik, Nanisivik, Norman Wells, Pine Point, Rankin Inlet, Resolute Bay, Tungsten, Tuktoyaktuk, Yellowknife. These full-service institutions are the best locations for exchanging foreign currency as they usually offer the highest exchange rate. Business hours, Monday-Friday, are usually 10 a.m. to 3 p.m. Closed Sat.-Sun. and holidays. **Credit cards**, such as Chargex, VISA, Mastercharge, American Express, Diner's Club, etc., are honored in most of the larger communities. In smaller communities it is best to carry cash or traveller's cheques, which can be cashed almost anywhere.

Sales Tax

There is no sales tax in the N.W.T.

Metric Conversion

Canada is converting to metric measurements. Speed limit signs, distance signs and weather forecasts are in metric units in the N.W.T. Gasoline and other products are also being converted to metric units. To help you convert while visiting us, these examples of commonly-used expressions are offered:

1.6 kilometres (km) = one mile
80 kilometres per hour (km/h) = 50 miles per hour
50 kilometres per hour (km/h) = 30 miles per hour
4.5 litres (L) = one Imperial gallon
3.8 litres = one U.S. gallon
0.45 kilogram (kg) = one pound
-18° Celsius = 0° Fahrenheit
0° Celsius = 32° Fahrenheit
20° Celsius = 68° Fahrenheit

Mobile Radios

A permit is required in Canada for the operation of certain two-way mobile radio equipment installed in vehicles and boats. Permits are also required for CBs (amateur or general radio service equipment).

However, radio equipment having a power input of 100 milliwatts or less operating in the 26.97 to 27.27 MHz band may be operated in Canada without formal licensing. For more information on radio licensing and permits contact:

Department of Communications, P.O. Box 2700, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2R1.

There are about 2,000 Citizen's Band radio licences in the N.W.T. As a service, several northern CB clubs along the Mackenzie route monitor Channel 19 in

order to make contact with road-users who may require assistance or information. The Yellowknife club provides similar monitoring for users of small craft on Great Slave Lake and other lakes and rivers close to Yellowknife.

For more information on CB operators in the Northwest Territories contact: **Northern Tower Talkers CB Club, P.O. Box 773, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0.**

Scientific Research

Visitors to the Northwest Territories who are planning to carry out scientific research must be licensed under the Scientists Ordinance. Licensing makes it possible to ensure that there is adequate consultation with any native communities affected, and that all concerned are aware of the presence and purpose of the research team. Inquiries or applications may be sent to **Science Advisor, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2L9.**

Visiting Pilots

Canada welcomes air visitors, and the entry of tourist aircraft is generally a quick, routine matter. For the convenience of visiting pilots, a publication titled "Air Tourist Information — Canada" is available on request. It lists Canadian aeronautical publications and charts together with prices and information on where they may be obtained. It also lists authorized customs airports. If you plan to fly north of the 60th parallel write Transport Canada: (for eastern Arctic) Public Affairs, 21st Floor, Place de Ville, Ottawa K1A 0N5; (for central Arctic) Public Affairs, Box 8550, 125 Garry St., Winnipeg, Man. R3C 0P6; (for western Arctic) 9820 107 St., Edmonton, Alta. T5K 1G3.

The N.W.T. has improved its air travel facilities greatly in the last few years. Many communities now have improved airstrips that meet national standards for day and night operations. Terminal buildings are common and weather observing and radio facilities are built in. However, this is still a destination for only experienced pilots using aircraft with good navigation and communication aids. For the amateur pilot, northern flying conditions away from the Fort Smith-Inuvik corridor are extremely hazardous. Flights outside this corridor and north of the treeline are generally in a region officially designated as an "area of compass unreliability." This uncertainty, coupled with occasional gaps of 402 to 643 km (250-400 miles) between surface navigational aids and a lack of prominent terrain features calls for cautious flight planning.

Fuel

Access to fuel in the northern communities can be difficult for the touring pilot, with the exceptions of Baker Lake,

Cambridge Bay, Coppermine, Coral Harbour, Fort Simpson, Fort Smith, Frobisher Bay, Hay River, Inuvik, Norman Wells, Rankin Inlet, Tuktoyaktuk and Yellowknife. Fuel normally available is 100/130 AVGAS and JP4.

Important: In communities other than the above, the itinerant pilot should make prior arrangements with the local co-op or airline serving the community.

Nav-aids

See the Northern Supplement available from **Canada Map Office, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, 615 Booth Street, Ottawa, Ont. K1A 0E9.**

Radio

Some Territorial Government-operated airports have VHF radio, frequencies 122.4 and 121.5. These frequencies are monitored normally for 37½ hours per week only.

Other questions

For information not covered, contact: **Chief, Airports Division, Department of Local Government, Government of the N.W.T., Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2L9.**



The Northwest Territories at a Glance

Total Area: 3,376,698 km² (1,304,903 mi²) or one-third the total area of Canada or equal in size to India.

Did you know that the N.W.T. is larger than Texas, Alaska, California and New Mexico combined? And it is 13 times larger than West Germany?

Land Area: 3,244,608 km² (1,252,743 mi²)

Fresh Water Area: 132,090 km² (51,000 mi²)

Latitude: 60° - 84° (land mass) or 3,404 km (2,115 mi.) north to south

Longitude: 60° - 136° (land mass) or 3,283 km (2,040 mi.) east to west

Highest elevation: 2762 m (9061 feet)

Highest recorded temperature: 35.6°C (97°F)

Lowest recorded temperature: -55.6°C (-68°F)

Highest Waterfall: Virginia Falls 90 m (300 feet), South Nahanni River.

Largest River: Mackenzie 1800 km (1118 mi), from Great Slave Lake to the Beaufort Sea. The Rhine River is 1320 km (820 mi) long and the Mississippi is 3779 km (2348 mi) long.

Largest Lake: Great Bear 31,080 km² (12,000 mi²)

Largest Island: Baffin 476,068 km² (183,810 mi²)

Resource Industries: mining (lead-zinc, gold, silver, uranium), hunting, trapping, commercial fishing, petroleum, natural gas.

Secondary Industry: tourism, arts and crafts.

Population: 46,000 (Composition — 15,500 Inuit (Eskimo); 8,500 Dene (Indian); 4,500 Metis (mixed ancestry); and 17,500 of other extraction.)

Area per person: There are 73 km² (28 mi²) for each person in the N.W.T. compared to 5 km² (2 mi²) in Alaska, .021 km² (.008 mi²) in California, .008 km² (.003 mi²) in New York.

National Parks: 3 — Nahanni, Wood Buffalo, Auyuittuq

Floral Emblem: mountain avens

Government: 22 member elected Assembly, head of Government is Commissioner appointed by Minister of Indian Affairs and Northern Development in the Federal Cabinet.

Climate

The territories are not a land of eternal ice and snow, although there are permanent icecaps on the far northern islands. Nor does our climate compete with the balmy Caribbean, although some areas have recorded temperatures as high as 38°C (100°F).

Warm sweaters or ski jackets, and rain gear, are recommended in the Arctic climatic zone where freezing temperatures in summer can occur in spite of the almost constant daylight. Winter, when heavily-insulated clothing and footwear are necessary, is intensely cold in both zones. The following information provides a general guide to weather conditions and temperatures in areas now most popular with visitors. Your wardrobe and equipment should be chosen accordingly.



A caribou snowsuit in Baker Lake.

Canada's Northwest Territories stretch 3,200 kilometres (2,000 miles) east to west and from the 60th parallel to the North Pole. They cover more than 3.3 million square kilometres (1.3 million square miles).

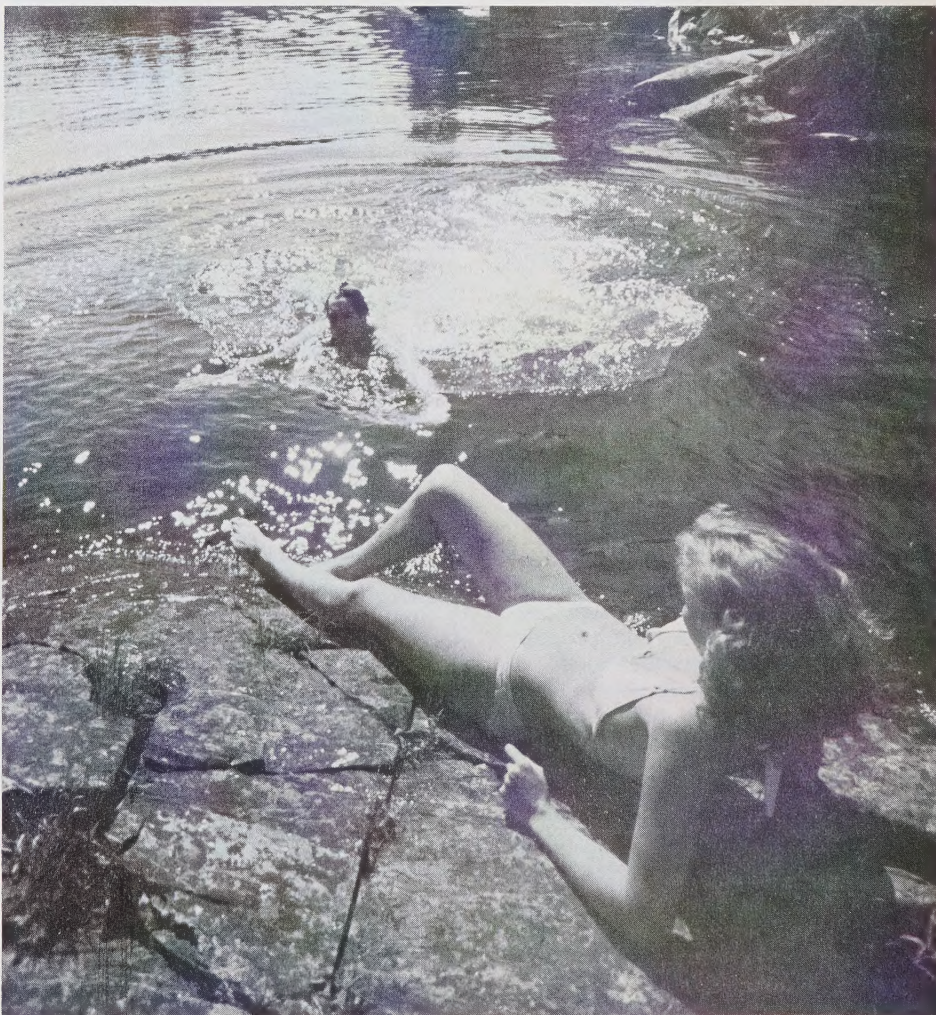
Such vastness offers a striking variation in climate throughout the year. Two climatic zones — the sub-Arctic and Arctic — divide the territories. (The boundary between the two bears no relationship to the Arctic Circle.) A large part of the N.W.T. lies within the sub-Arctic zone, including the entire Mackenzie Valley, and covers most of the Canadian prairies and parts of the northern United States.

The farther north you go in summer, the more daylight you encounter. For example, if you're in Inuvik or Cambridge Bay on June 21 you have 24 hours of sunlight while in Yellowknife you bask under 20 hours of sunlight followed by four hours of twilight. Winters are another story. Inside the Arctic Circle (see map inside front cover) the sun doesn't rise above the horizon Dec. 21. Yellowknifers have five hours of daylight while in Calgary, Alta., daylight lasts for eight hours.

How dark is dark during the winter months? Although the sun may not appear above the horizon — or if it does for an hour or so — the dawns and dusks are not as dark or as short as you may think. Because the sun sets at such a very low angle, the days are blessed with extremely long periods of twilight. For example, on the Arctic Circle in November, the sun would remain just above the horizon for two hours. But there's a good four hours of twilight before sunrise and after sunset.

The Mackenzie Basin

A striking feature of the climate of the Mackenzie Basin is the wide range from summer to winter temperatures. July is the warmest month and the daily summer temperatures average about 10°C (50°F). Daily average temperatures are the average of the highest and the lowest temperatures for the day. Temperatures fall below 0°C (32°F) for seven months — October to April. Extreme



The short but sunny territorial summers contrast markedly with the popular misconception of a frozen North. (photo by Frank Grant)

temperatures such as -57°C (-70°F) have been recorded but this is as rare as the 36°C (97°F) that was recorded in Fort Simpson in 1977. Local effects like the nearness to bodies of water have a noticeable effect on the frost-free period which ranges from 50-100 days throughout the Basin.

Annual precipitation is light ranging from 23-38 cm (9-15 inches). Snowfalls average about 127 cm (50 inches). Snow is probable in any month except June, July and August.

The Mackenzie Basin can be divided into two climatic zones.

Southern Mackenzie

Summers in this area are roughly comparable to the prairie provinces although temperatures are slightly lower. The thermometer seldom climbs above 29°C (85°F), but the average daily maximum temperature in July is about 21°C (69°F) at night.

The long sunny days provide an invigorating climate and rainfall is very light. There are 20 hours of daylight in June in the southern Mackenzie. The area averages eight hours of bright sunshine a day throughout the summer.

Northern Mackenzie

Like the Baffin and parts of the Keewatin, this is truly the land of the midnight sun where sunsets blend into sunrises. Non-stop summer activities are possible through much of June and July. The climate is much the same as in southern regions, but with 3-8°C taken off their average temperatures. Rainfall is lower near the Arctic coast, averaging not more than 6 cm (2.5 inches).

Southern Baffin Island

This area lies within the Arctic and the summers are cool. Usual July maximums are around 10°C (50°F) and the minimums are in the range of 2°C (35°F). However, temperatures have been recorded up to 24°C (75°F).

Long hours of summer sunshine compensate to some extent for the cool temperatures and there is only 12-25 cm (5-10 inches) of rain during June, July and August.

Keewatin

During the warmest summer month the temperature rises to about 15°C (60°F) and falls at night to about 4°C (40°F). Extreme summer temperatures have exceeded 29°C (85°F), generally in the Barrens. Spring comes late because of the slow melting of ice and cold waters. Freezing temperatures can occur in any month but, on average, the frost-free period ranges from 40-60 days.

TEMPERATURES

The following chart indicates the mean (or average) temperatures during the summer months and the average low temperatures at night (mean daily minimum) and the average high temperature in the afternoon (mean daily maximum).

	JUNE		JULY		AUG.		SEPT.	
	C°	F°	C°	F°	C°	F°	C°	F°
Baker Lake								
Mean	3.6	38	10.5	51	10.0	50	2.4	36
Mean Daily Max.	6.6	44	15.6	60	14.0	57	5.5	42
Mean Daily Min.	0	32	5.5	42	5.5	42	0	32
Coppermine								
Mean	3.6	38	9.4	49	8.8	48	2.2	36
Mean Daily Max.	4.9	45	13.3	56	12.2	54	5.0	41
Mean Daily Min.	0	32	5	41	4.8	41	-5	31
Norman Wells								
Mean	14.2	57	16.0	61	13.3	56	5.5	42
Mean Daily Max.	19.4	67	21.6	71	18.3	65	10.0	50
Mean Daily Min.	7.7	46	10.0	50	7.7	46	1.6	35
Fort Simpson								
Mean	14.4	58	16.6	62	14.4	58	7.7	46
Mean Daily Max.	20.5	69	23.3	74	20.5	69	12.7	55
Mean Daily Min.	8.3	47	10.6	51	8.6	47	2.7	37
Fort Smith								
Mean	12.7	55	16	61	10.5	51	7.7	46
Mean Daily Max.	20.0	68	22.7	73	21.0	70	12.7	55
Mean Daily Min.	6.1	43	9.4	49	7.7	46	2.2	36
Frobisher Bay								
Mean	3.6	38	7.7	46	6.9	44	2.4	36
Mean Daily Max.	6.6	44	11.8	53	17.7	50	5.0	41
Mean Daily Min.	.5	33	3.8	39	3.6	38	0	32
Inuvik								
Mean	10.0	50	13.3	56	10.5	51	2.7	37
Mean Daily Max.	16.0	61	19.4	67	15.4	60	6.6	44
Mean Daily Min.	3.8	39	17.7	45	5.0	41	-1.0	30
Resolute								
Mean	0.0	32	4.4	40	2.7	37	-5.0	23
Mean Daily Max.	2.2	36	7.2	45	5.1	41	-2.0	27
Mean Daily Min.	-2.0	28	.5	33	.5	33	-6.0	20
Yellowknife								
Mean	12.2	54	16.1	61	14.1	57	6.8	44
Mean Daily Max.	17.2	63	20.5	69	18.2	65	10.0	50
Mean Daily Min.	7.2	45	11.6	53	10.0	50	3.5	38

Sunrise/Sunset Times (24-hour clock)

	June 21	July 21	Aug. 21	Sept. 21
Fort Smith	0303/2156	0343/2124	0456/2004	0609/1831
Yellowknife	0239/2240	0329/2157	0455/2025	0618/1842
Inuvik	complete daylight	0118/0245	0537/2216	0733/2001
Resolute Bay	complete daylight	complete daylight	0231/2207	0549/1834

Community Sketches

You're welcome in the 64 communities that dot the North and, since most are small, you should have no trouble getting around. If you do need help, don't hesitate to ask a local person; most people will be glad to help you. Please remember that if a person seems reticent, it might be a language problem — many native people speak the language of the area but not English. Hours of operation of most businesses are 9:30 a.m. to 5:30 p.m., Monday to Saturday. Some stay open later on Friday. Unless otherwise noted, communities with scheduled air service have improved airstrips.

AKLAVIK (pop. 750)

Aklavik, a native word meaning the place of the barrenland grizzly, has always been a meeting ground where Loucheaux (Indian and Inuvialuit (Delta Eskimo) met in search of food and furs. The settlement is located on the western edge of the massive and resource rich Mackenzie River Delta. It became a permanent settlement in 1915 when a trading post opened here. Fur is the economic mainstay of the community. The Delta is the main source of muskrat pelts for the fur fashion industry. The local fur garment and crafts shop uses local furs and expertise to create a thriving industry.

There is excellent scenery and access to the Richardson Mountains through Aklavik. Visitors can also revisit the scenes made famous by the Mad Trapper of Rat River who led the R.C.M.P. on a winter's chase through the Richardson Mountains.

Services include a hotel and cafe, general stores, taxi, scheduled air service via Kenn Borek Air from Inuvik, R.C.M.P., radio, TV, nursing station, seasonal swimming pool, curling rink, pool hall and theatre in the community centre. A public ice road to Inuvik is open from early January to late April. Location 68°12'N 135°W.

ARCTIC BAY (pop. 377)

Wage employment with oil exploration companies and the Nanisivik lead-zinc mine at nearby Strathcona Sound provides alternatives to the more traditional pursuits of hunting for seal, caribou, polar bears and white fox trapping. There are no commercial accommodation or meal

facilities, although groceries are available. Community services include an unimproved airstrip, a nursing station and community centre where movies and dances are held. Kenn Borek Air provides scheduled air service, and Nordair flies to Nanisivik which is 21 km (13 miles) away by road. Location: 72°02'N 85°11'W.

ARCTIC RED RIVER (pop. 79)

A traditional fishing camp for generations, the permanent community started in 1868 with the establishment of a mission, soon followed by a trading post. Today the community depends on the harvesting of wildlife for meat and furs, fishing and highway construction. No commercial accommodation or meal service are available although a small co-op sells groceries and dry goods. Arctic Red is located 128 km (80 miles) south of Inuvik on the Dempster Highway where the Arctic Red River flows into the Mackenzie. It is at the ferry crossing for the Dempster Highway. There is no airstrip although float equipped planes can land in the river. Location: 67°27'N 133°46'W.

BAKER LAKE (pop. 1,017)

Located at the approximate geographic centre of Canada, Baker Lake is on the north shore of a large lake of the same name. It is unique as the only inland Inuit

community in the Northwest Territories, and has a world-wide reputation for the sculpture, prints and tapestry work produced by local artisans. Meals and accommodation are provided at a hotel and a lodge. Community services include RCMP, radio, TV, nursing station, curling rink, seasonal swimming pool, bakery, coffee shop and movies. Travellers will find several outfitters who can arrange fishing and photography expeditions including trips to Kazan Falls. Baker Lake is also the terminus for Thelon-Hanbury, Kazan and Dubawnt Rivers canoe trips. Calm Air provides scheduled air service. Location: 64°18'N 96°03'W.

BATHURST INLET (pop. 30)

The community, first established in 1929 by prospectors, was abandoned in 1964 and most of the people moved away. A naturalist lodge was established in 1969 resulting in the revitalization of the community. Most of the people live off the land, fishing, hunting and trapping, with some wage economy as guides and lodge staff. Meals and accommodation are available at Bathurst Inlet Naturalist Lodge, in the summer only, if prior notice is given. There is an unimproved airstrip but no scheduled air service. Location: 66°50'N 108°01'W.

BAY CHIMO (pop. approx. 66)

An unorganized settlement of 12 Inuit families, 96 km (60 miles) northeast of Bathurst Inlet. Access is by float equipped planes only. Location: 67°42'N 107°54'W.

BROUGHTON ISLAND (pop. 314)

With the increasing tourism sparked by the establishment of nearby Auyuittuq National Park, more and more visitors are discovering the stark and stunning beauty of this community at the terminus of the Pangnirtung Pass hiking trail. It was first settled in 1956 when people moved there from Kivitoo to work on construction of the Distant Early Warning (D.E.W.) Line



These three wheel all-terrain vehicles are becoming a popular arctic alternative to snowmobiles. This is Sunday in Baker Lake. (photo by Brian Thompson)

site. The economy is based on government employment, handicrafts, sealing, hunting, and some fishing. An outfitter in town takes visitors to see the rugged coastline with its fiords, icebergs, bird nesting sites and Arctic tundra. Community services include nursing station, pool hall, snack bar and community centre where movies are held. Scheduled air service is two times weekly via First Air from Frobisher Bay. Location: 67°33'N 64°02'W.

CAMBRIDGE BAY (pop. 864)

Today people come to Cambridge Bay for excellent char fishing, to camp and to observe the numerous species of birds that come to the area. The remains of the explorer Amundsen's vessel Maud still rest, half-sunken, in the harbor. The area abounds in white fox, caribou and fish. Construction of the Loran and later D.E.W. Line installations resulted in a migration of people from the many nearby camps to the settlement. The present economy is based on commercial fishing and wage employment. Travel industry services include a hotel with dining room, and scheduled air service via N.W.T. Air, and Pacific Western. Community services include RCMP, radio, (1490 KHz and 105.1 MHz) TV, nursing station, arena, curling rink and movies. Fish caught in the area include Arctic char, whitefish, tulibee and lake trout. Location: 69°07'N 105°03'W.

CAPE DORSET (pop. 725)

The name Dorset Culture originates from the ruins of an ancient Inuit culture found at Cape Dorset. The West Baffin Eskimo Co-operative, incorporated in 1959, is the largest employer, handling the superb artwork (soapstone carvings, prints and lithographs) for which Cape Dorset has gained world-wide renown. Some hunting, fishing, trapping and sealing is still carried on. Scheduled air service is twice weekly via First Air from Frobisher Bay. Accommodation available at the Kingnait Inn. Community services include RCMP, radio (105.1 MHz), TV, nursing station, school gym, movies. Location: 64°14'N 76°32'W.

CHESTERFIELD INLET (pop. 281)

A Hudson's Bay Company post and a Roman Catholic mission were established in 1912. Meals and commercial accommodation are not available locally. There is Arctic char fishing in this area. The settlement is serviced on a scheduled basis from Rankin Inlet via Calm Air. Community services include radio, RC Mission Hospital, curling rink, community centre and movies. Location: 63°21'N 90°42'W.

CLYDE RIVER (pop. 443)

The first permanent establishment at Clyde River was the Hudson's Bay Company post, opened in 1923. A weather station was built in 1942 and the former

U.S. Naval Station Cape Christian, 16 km (10 miles) from Clyde River, was closed in early 1975. The economic base is limited wage employment, hunting, trapping and carving. Scheduled air service is via First Air from Frobisher Bay. Community services include RCMP, nursing station, movies. There is no commercial accommodation and no meal service at Clyde but groceries are available. Location: 70°27'N 68°33'W.



Inukshuks are a familiar sight north of the treeline.

COLVILLE LAKE (pop. 73)

The community is located near the southwestern end of the lake. The only all-log community in the N.W.T. (approx. 30 cabins), Colville Lake is located 59 km (36 mi) above the Arctic Circle. It was first organized in 1962 with the establishment of a Roman Catholic mission. The log church, the largest building in the community, has a 1,000-lb. bell in its belfry. All the local Hareskin Indians are engaged in trapping. Accommodation and meals are available at Colville Lake Lodge in the summer. There is also a small co-op store and unimproved airstrip. Nahanni Airlines provides charter air service to the community from Norman Wells. Fishing in the area is mainly for lake trout and arctic grayling. Location: 67°02'N 126°W.

COPPERMINE (pop. 766)

Located at the mouth of the Coppermine River, it was named by Samuel Hearne in 1771. The area had long been a camping site for Inuit hunting and fishing parties. Only after the Hudson's Bay Company opened a post in 1927, an Anglican mission was built in 1928, and the RCMP arrived in 1932, did Coppermine become a permanent settlement. Today fishing, hunting, trapping and crafts production supplement the economic base of the community. The build-up of the petroleum industry in the North has resulted in wage employment from this sector as well. Public accommodation is

available at the Igloo Inn with cooking facilities provided. Community services include RCMP, radio (105.1 MHz), TV, nursing station, curling rink, seasonal swimming pool, school gym and movies. There is scheduled air service via N.W.T. Air from Yellowknife. Location: 67°50'N 115°05'W.

CORAL HARBOUR (pop. 414)

The present settlement was started in 1924 when the Hudson's Bay Company established a trading post here. The economy is based on fur — mainly fox, polar bear and seal. Walrus and seal are plentiful in the area and sport fishing is excellent on the north end of the island with good Arctic char fishing at four rivers close to the settlement. The Katudgiviik Co-op operates the hotel. A nursing station operates within the settlement. There is scheduled air service to Coral Harbour via Calm Air from Rankin Inlet and via First Air from Frobisher Bay. Location: 64°08'N 83°10'W.

DETAH (pop. 161)

Across the bay, Yellowknife bustles with commerce and government business but the Dogrib settlement goes about life in the quiet traditional way. Maintaining strong ties to the land, the people of Detah spurn the faster pace of city life. Detah people come to Yellowknife by a 20-km (13-mile) road around the bay or by freighter canoe in summer. Once the ice is thick enough on Great Slave Lake, an ice road is opened that can accommodate cars and trucks, snowmobiles and dog teams. The community was established when a number of people from small settlements relocated here. There is no public accommodation or meal service available in the community. Community services include radio, TV. Detah beadwork and sewing are sold in several Yellowknife retail outlets. There are no airstrips near the settlement. Location: 62°27'N 114°21'W.

EDZO (see RAE-EDZO)

ENTERPRISE (pop. 40)

The highway service centre of Enterprise is the first community Mackenzie Highway travellers visit in the N.W.T. It is located 83 km (52 mi.) north of the N.W.T./Alberta border. The community's economy is centred around the restaurants, motel, licensed premises, gas stations and the highways division maintenance yards. Community services include radio, TV. There is a spectacular view of the Hay River Gorge from the eastern edge of Enterprise and the beautiful Alexandra and Louise Falls are only 9 km (6 miles) south of the settlement. There are daily bus connections between Hay River and southern Canada and three times weekly bus connections with Yellowknife. The closest airport is in Hay River. Location: 60°34'N 116°10'W.

ESKIMO POINT (pop. 980)

A permanent post was built in 1921 but only in recent years has the settlement had a year-round population. The present economy is based on fur, caribou, seal, fish and handicrafts. It is the home of the Inuit Cultural Institute, which was established to encourage and preserve the Inuit culture. Eskimo Point is serviced by the Ootakevik Motel which provides meals for guests only and there is a separate restaurant in the village. Community services include RCMP, radio (105.1 MHz), TV, nursing station, skating rink and school gym. The possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. Calm Air runs scheduled air service from Churchill. Location: 61°07'N 94°03'W.

FORT FRANKLIN (pop. 554)

Fort Franklin, on Great Bear Lake, is home for the Slavey tribe. It is located near the site where Sir John Franklin spent the winter on one of his overland explorations in the N.W.T. The present community has developed only in the past 20 years, and most of the older residents remember a youth spent living out in the bush. For fishermen there is excellent trophy fishing on Great Bear Lake and a co-operative operates to produce and market handicrafts. There is commercial accommodation at Saw Tew Lodge for up to four persons and there are two general stores. Community services include RCMP, radio (1230 KHz), nursing station, skating rink, school gym. The possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. Charter and scheduled air service is available from Nahanni Air Services in Norman Wells. The community has an unimproved airstrip. Location: 65°11'N 123°26'W.

FORT GOOD HOPE (pop. 446)

This is the oldest settlement in the northern Mackenzie Valley. It was established by the Northwest Company in 1805 as a fur trading post. There is a small general store but no public accommodation in the community. Community services include unimproved airstrip, RCMP, radio (920 KHz), nursing station, recreation hall, outdoor skating rink, curling rink. The possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. Scheduled and charter service is available from Nahanni Air Services in Norman Wells. Location: 66°15'N 128°38'W.

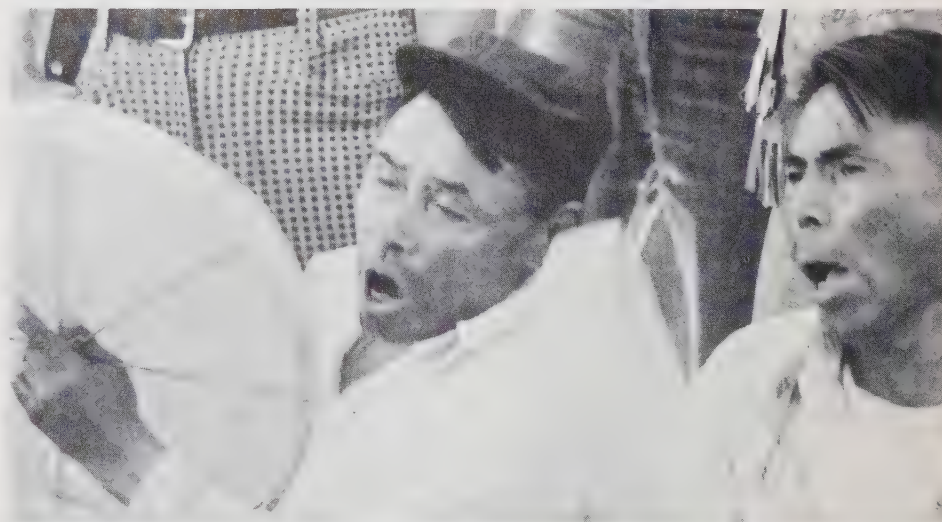
FORT LIARD (pop. 344)

The Northwest Company established the first post in this area prior to 1807. A place of beauty, with its tall stands of timber, scenic river trips and excellent berry picking, the community is attempting to expand its hunting and trapping base with wage employment in government, petroleum and mineral industries. The Liard Highway, scheduled to open in 1983 will provide access to the community and to the fabled Nahanni National Park from Fort Nelson, B.C. and Fort

Simpson. There is a new hotel to accommodate guests, as well as a coffee shop, craft shop noted for locally made birch bark baskets and grocery store. Fishing for whitefish and jackfish and boat tours on the Liard River can be arranged. Community services include RCMP, radio TV, nursing station, skating rink and movies. Scheduled air service is provided by Simpson Air six days a week. Location: 60°15'N 123°28'W.

FORT McPHERSON (pop. 781)

This post was built in 1840, and in 1852, an Indian village situated on the bank of the Peel River was moved to Fort McPherson. With its ideal setting on an isolated hill rising above the river, the location was considered an excellent lookout site for the Indian inhabitants. Fort McPherson is still an important trapping centre, but the economy is now supplemented by oil exploration activity, work on the Dempster Highway (which connects Dawson City, Yukon with Inuvik), handicrafts and government employment. A small motel with restaurant is now open. Community services include RCMP, nursing station, radio (680 KHz), TV, skating rink, curling rink, gym. Scheduled air service is provided by Kenn Borek Air from Inuvik. Location: 67°27'N 134°53'W.



Drum dances are traditional entertainment in the Dene (Indian) settlements of the Western Arctic. (photo by Ted Mehler)

FORT NORMAN (pop. 312)

The community is located on a terraced bank of the Mackenzie River, near the junction with the Great Bear River. The original Indian village and a historic church are features of the settlement. Fort Norman was founded with the establishment of a trading post in 1810. Hunting, fishing and trapping form the economic base of this settlement. Accommodation and meals are available at Bear Rock Lodge provided arrangements are made in advance. Community services include RCMP, radio (920 KHz), nursing station, outdoor rink and movies. The possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. Scheduled air service is provided by

Nahanni Air from Norman Wells. Location: 64°54'N 125°34'W.

FORT PROVIDENCE (pop. 571)

Fort Providence is located on the steep north bank of the Mackenzie River, about 72 km (45 miles) downstream from Great Slave Lake. Overlooking the half-mile-wide Mackenzie River, the present community had its start in the 1860s when a Roman Catholic mission was established there. Fort Providence can be reached by the Mackenzie Highway System. It is at the end of a 5-km (3-mile) access road off Highway 3. Wage employment with the government and tourism are the main sources of revenue. The women of the community are noted for fine porcupine quill work and moose hair embroidery. Sport fishing in the area includes grayling, pike, pickerel and fly-in trout fishing. Rental boats are available. Accommodation is available in the community or at a small motel on the highway, and meals are available at local restaurants. Community services include RCMP, radio (1230 KHz), TV, nursing station, seasonal swimming pool, pool hall, skating rink, movies, gas and garage service and licensed liquor outlets. Air Providence offers scheduled and charter air service in this community. There is an unimproved airstrip. Location: 61°21'N 117°40'W.

FORT RESOLUTION (pop. 523)

The settlement of Fort Resolution, at the terminus of Highway 6 in the Slave River Delta, grew around the Hudson's Bay Company post which was established in the area in 1786. When the Hudson's Bay Company and the Northwest Company united in 1821 the community was named Fort Resolution. The community was much larger during the 1800's when it was a major fur and transportation centre. The present economy is based on trapping, logging and sawmill operation. Beaulieu's Motel provides accommodation, but there are no meals available. Groceries can be purchased in the community. Community services include

RCMP, radio, TV, nursing station, a heated outdoor pool open during the summer, skating rink, gas and garage services. A handicraft store and tourist centre is open daily. Scheduled air service is provided via Ptarmigan Airways from Yellowknife. Location: 61°10'N 113°40'W.

FORT SIMPSON (pop. 1,001)

The North West Company, a major trading competitor of the Hudson's Bay Company, established their northern headquarters here in 1804. They were attracted by the wealth of furs, particularly marten, in the area. Fort Simpson is located at km 480 (Mile 296) of the Mackenzie Highway at the junction of the Liard and Mackenzie Rivers making it an ideal jumping off point for Nahanni National Park. Accommodation is available at the Fort Simpson Hotel or at Check Point Lodge, outside of town. Meals are available at both establishments and at three restaurants. Community services include RCMP, radio (1490 KHz and 690 KHz), TV, hospital, curling rink, arena, theatre, track, tennis courts, gym, seasonal swimming pool, gas and garage service and licensed liquor outlets. There are campground and picnic facilities in town. Year-round information centre for Nahanni National Park at Parks Canada headquarters. The local tourist information centre is located beside the crafts shop downtown. Scheduled air service is provided by Pacific Western Airlines. Simpson Air flies in from Fort Nelson, B.C. and Yellowknife. Location: 61°52'N 121°23'W.

FORT SMITH (pop. 2,234)

Located on the main river route from southern Canada to the North, Fort Smith has a long and colorful history. The portage at the Rapids of the Drowned was known as Fort York as early as 1715. The settlement came into being with the establishment of the Hudson's Bay Company post in 1874. From 1911 until 1967 it was the main government administrative centre in the territories. Following the establishment of the territorial capital in Yellowknife, the town is now a regional government centre. Travellers have easy access to Fort Smith via Hwy. 5. The town is located on the Alberta-Northwest Territories boundary close to Wood Buffalo National Park, where the world's most numerous herds of buffalo roam free in their natural habitat. The park is also the home of whooping cranes, moose, woodland caribou, black bear, fox, lynx, mink and numerous other animals. Fort Smith's other attractions include the famous series of four rapids on the Slave River, the nesting site for a colony of white pelicans. A hotel, a motel and two restaurants service the town. Community services include RCMP, radio, TV, skating rink, laundromat, golf club, pool, stockcar and snowmobile tracks, hospital, rifle range,

gas and garage service and licensed liquor outlets. Visit the Northern Life Museum, which portrays the early days of the North's pioneers and aboriginal people. Town operates information centre June-Sept. in Conibear Park; Parks Canada has year-round service for Wood Buffalo National Park information. Pacific Western provides scheduled jet service to the town. Location: 60°N 111°53'W.

FROBISHER BAY (pop. 2,454)

The settlement is named after Sir Martin Frobisher, the first European explorer to sail these Arctic waters. He celebrated the first Thanksgiving on North American soil at Frobisher Bay in 1577 in honor of his safe arrival. The town was established in 1942 with the installation of a U.S. Air Force airstrip. In 1955 the airstrip was extended and Frobisher Bay became the main logistics centre for the construction of the D.E.W. Line. Today the town is bustling with government and private enterprise. Visitors should see the satellite community of Apex located in a scenic valley 5 km (3 miles) from the town centre. The Ikaluit Sanavigat, an Inuit gold and silver jewellery workshop, is gaining international recognition for their art pieces. Visitors can also see the Knitwear Centre and the crafts shop which produce distinctive wool sweaters and a variety of parkas. Boats and snowmobiles, taxis and buses are available to take visitors around the town; there are also retail outlets for the renowned Inuit art and handicrafts of the Baffin and Keewatin regions. The Nunuuta Sunaqtangit Museum also has Arctic displays. Community services include RCMP, radio (1230 KHz), TV, hospital, arena, pool, laundry and dry cleaners and sauna. The Frobisher Bay liquor store operates as a mail-order facility and is a supplier to local outlets; liquor cannot be purchased by individuals. Alcohol may not be bought for take-out at Frobisher Bay bars. Scheduled air service is by Nordair from Montreal. Accommodation and meals are available at three hotels and motels. Meals are also available at four restaurants. Location: 63°44'N 68°31'W.

GJOA HAVEN (pop. 493)

Roald Amundsen, skipper of the first vessel to navigate the Northwest Passage, called the little bay he chose as his wintering place the finest little harbor in the world, naming it Gjoa Haven after his yacht. Hudson's Bay opened a post there in 1927. The present economy is based on fur trapping, hunting, fishing, carving and some wage employment. Community services include radio (105.1 MHz), TV, nursing station and movies. The possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. N.W.T. Air provides scheduled air service to the community from Cambridge Bay. The community has an unimproved airstrip. Location: 68°38'N 95°53'W.

GRISE FIORD (pop. 95)

Kiddies in Grise Fiord are the first stop on Santa's route; they live in Canada's most northerly community, 1,544 km (960 miles) from the North Pole. Rated by some as the most beautiful spot in the North, Grise Fiord was established by a group of Inuit who were relocated from Baffin Island and the Hudson Strait regions. The economy of this spectacular mountainous area is hunting, trapping and fishing. Accommodation with kitchen facilities is available at the Grise Fiord Hotel. Community services include RCMP, nursing station and movies. Transportation into the community is via Kenn Borek Air out of Resolute. Location: 76°25'N 82°75'W.

HALL BEACH (pop. 396)

It is named after Captain Charles F. Hall who spent a number of years on Melville Peninsula in the mid-1800s. The surrounding area has been inhabited periodically since the 1200s as evidenced by some well-preserved archeological sites primarily of the Thule Eskimo Culture. Approximately 17 whalers' graves are found on nearby Ooglit Island, attesting to their grim existence. A camp for trophy char fishing is at nearby Hall Lake. Scenic Nunapariavik with five waterfalls and a natural footpath is three hours away from Hall Beach by canoe. The settlement became permanently established after the government built the large Foxe Main D.E.W. Line site 1953. The economy is based on government and D.E.W. Line employment, fur trapping and walrus hunting. Community services include a clinic, curling rink and movies. The possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. Scheduled air service is via Nordair. Public accommodation and meal service are not available. Location: 68°46'N 81°12'W.

HAY RIVER (pop. 3,345)

Visitors venturing north on the Mackenzie Highway by car will get their first look at Great Slave Lake in this busy port town. Barges bound for far-flung Arctic settlements load up at the docks every summer with their cargo of everything from houses to candy bars and televisions. Fishing boats loaded with catches of whitefish and lake trout come into the Hay River harbor to the packing plant facilities. The first building at Hay River was the Hudson's Bay post established in 1868. The Mackenzie Highway reached the community in 1949 heralding its growth as a major shipping and fishing port. The Great Slave Lake Railway, built to tap the lead-zinc deposits at nearby Pine Point, reached Hay River in 1964. Today, Hay River is a modern town with a diverse economy of transportation, communications, commercial fishing and service industries. This is the site of the only Indian reserve in the North, located across the channel from the main town.

Fifty-three kilometres (33 miles) south of town is Alexandra Falls where the Hay River plunges 32 m (106 feet) just off the Mackenzie route. It's a "must" for camera enthusiasts wishing to capture the rugged beauty of the North. Louise Falls is another beautiful cataract just 1.6 km (1 mile) north of Alexandra Falls. There are excellent hotels, restaurants and other travel industry services. Chamber of Commerce information centre located in the arena is open June-September. Community services include RCMP, radio, TV, hospital, two public health centres, arena, curling rink, roller skating, golf course, swimming pool, two beach areas, theatre, gas and garage service, licensed liquor outlets and dumping facilities for recreational vehicles nearby. Pacific Western Airlines provides jet service from Edmonton and Yellowknife. There are a number of charter airlines based at the community. Location: 60°51'N 115°44'W.

HOLMAN (pop. 336)

One of the friendliest northern communities, Holman people have recorded their proud heritage in a locally-built museum and a highly-developed arts and crafts industry. Silk screening and prints from stone cuts made in Holman are gaining national reputation, as are parkas and other clothing produced at their garment factory. Holman was not established until 1940 when the Hudson's Bay Company moved its post here from Fort Collinson. Located in the heart of an abundant wildlife area, Holman hunters and trappers take a rich harvest of white fox, polar bear and musk-ox. A nursing station and TV operate within the community. N.W.T. Air has scheduled air service to the community from Yellowknife. Hotel and dining facilities are available at the Arctic Char Inn. Location: 70°43'N 117°43'W.

IGLOOLIK (pop. 766)

Igloolik, on Igloolik Island in the Foxe Basin, has been populated since about 2000 B.C. Today research in this rich anthropological area goes on at the unique mushroom-shaped research centre, erected and operated by the federal government. The area is rich in walrus and seal. An active co-operative sells handicrafts made of walrus ivory, stone, bone and sealskin. A unique church built of locally-quarried stone is another attraction. Community services include RCMP, nursing station, radio (105.1 MHz) and movies. Hotel and meal service is available. Possession and use of alcohol is controlled by the local alcohol education committee. All orders for importing alcohol must first be approved by this committee. Scheduled air service is by First Air from Hall Beach and Frobisher Bay. There is an unimproved airstrip in the community. Location: 69°23'N 81°46'W.

INUVIK (pop. 2,892)

Hewn out of the wilderness in 1955, Inuvik is one of the largest communities in the Northwest Territories. Meaning "place of man," Inuvik is the major commercial, transportation and communications centre for the Mackenzie Delta, as well as the main supply base for the petro-chemical exploration activities in the area. The Dempster Highway, North America's first public road to cross the Arctic Circle, linked this frontier town to the Klondike centre of Dawson City, Yukon in 1979. Faced with a land of heaving soil and permanently frozen ground, engineers knew that underground utilities would be impossible and instead developed the unique utilidor system: a series of above-ground steam pipes, water and sewage lines connecting most buildings. There are hotels, restaurants, and other travel industry facilities. An active garment sewing centre employs many. From January to April the frozen waters of the Mackenzie Delta are snow-plowed to Aklavik and Tuktoyaktuk for car and truck travel to these settlements. Community services include RCMP, radio (860 KHz), TV, hospital, swimming pool, laundromat, arena, curling rink, theatre, gym and licensed liquor outlets. Scheduled air service from the Yukon and other delta towns is provided by Kenn Borek Air, Trans North Turbo Air and from Edmonton and Yellowknife by Pacific Western Airlines. There are a number of charter airlines in the community. Location: 68°21'N 133°43'W.

JEAN MARIE RIVER (pop. 49)

The unique, purely traditional artwork from this community is gaining national recognition. Using dyed moosehair and porcupine quills, the Jean Marie River native crafts project has held acclaimed exhibitions in southern cities. The community of Slavey Indians who live in attractive log cabins beside the Mackenzie River relies on hunting and trapping. Community services include radio, TV, curling rink and movies. There are no hotels, meals or scheduled air services although it is readily accessible from Fort Simpson by charter float planes, scow or winter road. Groceries are available. Location: 60°32'N 120°38'W.

KAKISA (pop. 41)

This scenic community, with its log cabins scattered among spruce and poplar stands, is located on the shores of Kakisa Lake. The community was established when the settlement at Tathline Lake moved in 1962 to have closer access to the just-completed Mackenzie Highway. It is located about 48 km (30 miles) south of Fort Providence at the end of a 13 km (8 mile) sideroad. Lady Evelyn Falls and campsite are excellent spots for visitors to stay in this area. They are halfway between Kakisa and the main highway. Primary activities here are fishing and

trapping. Rental boats are available for good fishing. There are no commercial outlets in this community. There is no airstrip here although float equipped planes can land on the lake. Location: 60°57'N 117°2'W.

LAC LA MARTRE (pop. 231)

Situated in a rich fur and fish harvesting area, this Dogrib Indian settlement depends on trapping, hunting and fishing for its livelihood. Community services include an unimproved airstrip, a health station and community centre. Possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. Ptarmigan Airways provides scheduled air service from Yellowknife. Location: 63°8'N 117°16'W.

LAKE HARBOUR (pop. 300)

Situated on a scenic fiord surrounded by high stone cliffs, Lake Harbour offers the photographer unparalleled vistas of the Baffin. The community was visited regularly before the 1900s by whalers who employed local people in their operations as well as to mine mica at the settlement. The Kimik Co-operative, government and hunting sea mammals provide the basic livelihood for the people. Local sculptors are noted for their work in a distinctive light green stone. Public accommodation and meal service are not available. Community services include RCMP and nursing station. Possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. Scheduled air service is by First Air from Frobisher Bay. Location: 62°51'N 69°53'W.

NAHANNI BUTTE (pop. 92)

The mountains and hills of the Mackenzie Range ring this small Slavey Indian settlement, near the entrance to Nahanni National Park. The Nahanni River, flowing through the park, is one of the most popular canoeing routes in the N.W.T. for naturalists and photographers. The variety of wildlife, canyons and legends attract visitors from around the world. At Nahanni Butte, most people's lives still revolve around hunting, fishing and trapping, with some seasonal employment, including guide services for visitors to the park. A park warden station is located in the settlement. A health station operates within the community. There is no public accommodation or meal service, but groceries are available. Scheduled air services provided by Simpson Air. An unimproved airstrip is located near the community. Location: 61°02'N 123°20'W.

NANISIVIK (Strathcona Sound) (pop. 291)

Near the northwestern tip of Baffin Island on the shores of Strathcona Sound, Nanisivik is the newest community in the North. It was born in 1974 when Nanisivik Mines Ltd., the chief employer for the community, began operations to

mine silver, lead and zinc mineral resources. Service facilities, including a Hudson's Bay store, school, nursing station and RCMP post are now established. There are no hotel or meal facilities. Scheduled air service via Nordair is available twice weekly. First Air flies from Pond Inlet once a week. Location: 73°02'N 84°33'W.

NORMAN WELLS (pop. 361)

A unique settlement in the North, Norman Wells originated not as a trading post, but as an oil-producing town for the Arctic. Alexander Mackenzie noted the petroleum seeping from the ground in 1789, but it was not until 1919 that Imperial Oil drilled the first oil well, making a strike at 30.4 metres (100 feet). With the advent of the Second World War, a pipeline was built from Canol, across the Mackenzie River from Norman Wells, to supply fuel to armed forces in Alaska. Although the pipeline closed down shortly after the war ended, hikers are discovering the old Canol route as an excellent access into some of the most breathtaking scenery in the territories — the Mackenzie Mountains. Norman Wells' economy is still based on oil and related activities, although it is also a distribution centre for the central Mackenzie Valley, and a key jump-off point for big-game hunting camps in the mountains. Hotels, meals, charter service are available. Community services include RCMP, radio (990 KHz), TV, nursing station, curling rink, tennis court and licensed liquor outlets. Scheduled air services is via Pacific Western Airlines from Edmonton and Yellowknife. Location: 65°17'N 126°51'W.

PANGNIRTUNG (pop. 909)

This community, situated in a beautiful setting surrounded by steeply rising mountains, is known as the "Switzerland of the Arctic." "Pang" is the terminus of one of two main passes and the major entrance to Auyuittuq National Park on Baffin Island. It is a jumping off point for hikers, mountain climbers, nature lovers and photographers visiting the park. Boat and snowmobile tours are available to take visitors to the park, several kilometres down the fiord from the community, to sites down the coast, or to nearby fishing camps. Economic activity consists of excellent sealing, fishing, hunting caribou and walrus as well as wage employment and the marketing of arts and crafts through the local co-operative. The Pangnirtung weaving shop has begun producing internationally recognized art works. Accommodation and meals are available at a local lodge. Community services include RCMP, radio (105.1 MHz), TV, cottage hospital, summer swimming and movies. Possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. First Air provides scheduled air service from Frobisher Bay. Location: 66°08'N 65°43'W.



Tuktoyaktuk's garment shop makes fur parkas.

PARADISE GARDENS (pop. 58)

A farming community situated along an ox-bow bend of the scenic Hay River Valley, Paradise Gardens is one of the few places in the Northwest Territories where agricultural crops are raised. A commercial campground accommodates visitors, who can enjoy swimming, canoeing and angling for walleye. Paradise Gardens is on the east side of the highway leading from Hay River to Enterprise, 30 km (18 miles) from Hay River. The closest airstrip is at Hay River.

PAULATUK (pop. 163)

Established in 1935 by the Roman Catholic Church, Paulatuk fought to survive for 35 years, before a school and power station gave the community permanence. With the establishment of the Paulatuk Co-op, the community began to grow and to include handicraft production in its economic base of hunting, fishing and sealing. The community operates a tourist camp at the nearby Hornaday River, in a good game viewing and char fishing area. Public accommodation or meal service is not available. Scheduled air service by Kenn Borek Air from Inuvik. Unimproved airstrip is in the community. Location: 69°49'N 123°59'W.

PELLEY BAY (pop. 281)

This community was founded as the site of a Roman Catholic mission in 1935. The remains of the Roman Catholic church, built by hand of locally-quarried stone, can still be seen today. The present economic base includes handicrafts, seal hunting in winter and Arctic char fishing in summer. Pelly Bay is particularly noted for its delicate and fine ivory carvings. Accommodation and meals are available at facilities run by the local co-operative. Community services include radio, TV, nursing station and movies. The possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. First Air provides scheduled air services from Hall Beach and N.W.T. Air flies in from Cambridge Bay. There is an unimproved airstrip near the community. Location: 68°32'N 89°48'W.

PINE POINT (pop. 1,719)

Perched astride a vast lead-zinc deposit, the town was constructed between 1962 and 1965 by Cominco Ltd. around its open-pit mine which is one of the largest in the world. Its modern look is far removed from its beginnings, when Indian fishermen showed Klondike-bound gold seekers musketballs and fish net weights made from metal they discovered near the present townsite. The Great Slave Lake Railway was built from Roma, Alta., to the community to transport the ore. The rail line has freight trains only. A paved highway from Hay River takes travellers to Pine Point. Nearby Polar Lake has a fine family campground with rainbow trout fishing and swimming. Mine tours are conducted during the summer. Hotel, dining, scheduled bus and chartered airline services are available. Community services include RCMP, mine clinic, radio, TV, arena, curling rink, skating rink, swimming pool, gas and garage service, laundry and theatre. Scheduled air service by Ptarmigan Airways from Yellowknife and Providence Air from Fort Smith. The town has an unimproved airstrip. Location: 60°50'N 114°28'W.

POND INLET (pop. 652)

Sweeping mountain landscapes across a 35 km (22-mile) fiord make this community a photographer's paradise. Called "Mittimatalik" by the Inuit (meaning "where Mittima rests"), the first recorded visitor to the community was W. E. Parry. Although some whaling activity took place in the 19th Century, the Hudson's Bay Company did not establish a post here until 1921. The traditional pursuits of seal and whale hunting, fishing and white fox trapping are being replaced by wage employment with a nearby mine and petroleum exploration. The active local co-operative operates a hotel in town and a fishing lodge at Koluktoo Bay. Community services include RCMP, radio, TV and nursing station. Air services include Kenn Borek Air from Resolute, First Air from Hall Beach, Nanisivik and Frobisher Bay. Location: 72°41'N 78°W.

PORT RADIIUM (pop. 140)

This is a small silver mining centre on the east coast of Great Bear Lake. Services include radio (105.1 MHz), and TV but no meals or accommodation. Access is by plane. There is a private, unimproved, gravel strip near the mine site. Location 66°5'N 118°02'W.

RAE-EDZO (pop. 1,367)

The largest Dene (Indian) settlement in the territories, Rae-Edzo has a strong and proud community spirit. Rae people, members of the Dogrib tribe, still retain their own language and customs. The twin community of Edzo was established by the government in 1965 at a site 24 km (15 miles) away on Highway 3. It was intended that Edzo be the focus of a new community and many of the key facilities of the two hamlets were established in the new development. There are no hotels in either hamlet, but meals are available in Rae. Community services include RCMP, radio (1200 KHz), TV, cottage hospital medical clinic, gym, movies and gas. Rae is located on a 10 km sideroad off Highway 3, about 106 km (68 miles) northwest of Yellowknife. Motorists should be aware that the law prohibits possession of alcoholic beverages within a 25 km (15 mile) radius of Rae. However, transportation of alcoholic beverages in unopened bottles through the prohibited area is permitted. There is no airstrip although float planes can land on Marian Lake. There is an active craft shop in Rae where Dene beadwork and garments are sold. Location: 62°50'N 116°03'W.

RAE LAKES (pop. 177)

Rae Lakes is a picturesque community 241 km (150 miles) northwest of Yellowknife. There are no meal or hotel facilities. Possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. Ptarmigan Airways provides twice weekly scheduled flights. There is an unimproved airstrip. Location: 64°10'N 117°20'W.

RANKIN INLET (pop. 956)

Until the early part of the 1950s few Inuit lived in what is now Rankin Inlet, although some fished there occasionally. The establishment of a settlement did not take place until the mining of nickel deposits at the location when Inuit came from camps and other settlements to work in the surface and underground operations. The mine closed in 1961 but the settlement remained. The relocation of the territorial government Keewatin region offices to Rankin Inlet has sparked development as well as reaffirmed the community's status as the key transportation and communication centre of the area. Rankin Inlet also has an active arts and crafts production centre. Boat trips to historic Marble Island can be arranged in the community. Arctic char and lake trout are found in lakes near the community. Community services include RCMP, radio

(1160 KHz), TV, nursing station, fish plant, curling rink, gym, movies and licensed liquor outlets. Scheduled air service is via Calm Air. Public accommodation, meals and a guests-only licensed lounge are available at Siniktarvik Hotel. Location: 62°49'N 92°05'W.

REPULSE BAY (pop. 328)

The Repulse Bay countryside is rolling grass, rock and flower-covered tundra. In addition to unspoiled natural beauty, the area also has historic areas and numerous bird nesting areas. The co-operative store sells the fine stone and bone carvings that are distinctive of the area. Accommodation is available in a transient centre. Meals are available at a coffee shop. Medical services are provided by a nursing station. Calm Air provides scheduled services into the community from Rankin Inlet and First Air from Hall Beach. Location: 66°32'N 86°15'W.

RESOLUTE (pop. 177)

This settlement, the nearest to the north magnetic pole, was occupied with the establishment of a joint U.S.-Canadian airstrip and weather station in 1947. In 1953 Eskimos moved to Resolute from Port Harrison, Quebec, and Pond Inlet to harvest the game resources here. Resolute has become a High Arctic hub of transportation, communication and administration. A new townsite is being built and the economic base is wage employment along with hunting, trapping and fishing. Accommodation and meals are available in three hotels and a tourist home. Community services include RCMP, radio, TV, nursing station, curling rink and theatre. Scheduled air service is provided by two major airlines: Nordair from Montreal, and Pacific Western from Edmonton. Kenn Borek Air provides regional air service from Resolute to other communities. Location: 74°42'N 94°54'W.

SACHS HARBOUR (pop. 170)

Continuous occupation of Banks Island and Sachs Harbour did not begin until 1953 when the RCMP established a station there. Today Sachs Harbour has become known as the home of the foremost trappers of white fox in Canada, if not the world. Some seal, caribou and polar bear hunting also takes place there and recently oil exploration has begun on the island. Accommodation and meals are available. Medical services are provided by a nursing station. There is scheduled air service via Kenn Borek Air from Inuvik. Location: 72°N 125°13'W.

SANIKILUAQ (pop. 324)

Located in the Belcher Islands in Hudson Bay, this southernmost settlement in the N.W.T. is renowned for its unique soapstone carvings. The community grew around a government school and the Hudson's Bay Company relocated its post to the new centre in 1928. Its

economy is based on domestic fishing, hunting and trapping as well as the production of carvings. Accommodation and meals are available at the Amaulik Motel. Community services include an RCMP post, TV and nursing station. Possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. There is air service from Timmins, Ontario and Great Whale, Quebec via Austin Air Services to this community. Location: 56°32'N 70°14'W.

SNARE LAKE (pop. 67)

Recognized as an unstructured community. Established by members of Rae Band in order to preserve traditional lifestyles and values. Hunting, trapping and fishing are the main pursuits. Only access is by float plane. Location: 64°10'N 114°20'W.

SNOWDRIFT (pop. 264)

The community of Snowdrift, the most northerly of the Chipewyan settlements, was established by 1927 when a number of individual families of the area congregated in the vicinity. The economic base of the area is trapping, hunting, fishing and crafts. Accommodation is available only to transient workers. Community services include RCMP, nursing station and movies. Possession of alcoholic beverages is prohibited. Ptarmigan Airways provides twice weekly scheduled air service from Yellowknife. There is an unimproved airstrip in the community. Location: 62°24'N 110°44'W.

SPENCE BAY (pop. 470)

A unique Inuit garment project that has grown into a high fashion industry has attracted a lot of attention to this community, located at the head of Spence Bay on the south coast of the Boothia Peninsula. The ladies group is gaining international recognition for their distinctive and attractive parkas and other clothing items, which are designed, crafted and embroidered with wool colored from dyes made from local plants and lichens. The present community of Spence Bay was established in 1947 when the people of Fort Ross moved to Spence after that post was closed due to severe ice conditions. Community services include RCMP, radio (105.1 MHz), TV and nursing station. Scheduled air service is via N.W.T. Air out of Cambridge Bay. Location: 69°32'N 93°32'W.

TROUT LAKE (pop. 61)

To set down on the Trout Lake airstrip is to step into a time and place worlds away from urban pressures. These Slavey people live in log buildings among tall trees on the shores of Trout Lake, an excellent lake for trout, walleye and northern pike. Visitors will see fishing nets hanging on lines, food cache sheds on high stilts, and fish drying on outdoor racks. The settlement operates the only lodge on the 52

km (32 mile) long lake. Groceries are available. Charter air service only from Fort Simpson, Fort Providence and Fort Nelson, B.C. There is an unimproved airstrip. Location: 60°26'N 121°15'W.

TUKTOYAKTUK (pop. 747)

Tuktoyaktuk, meaning "looks like a caribou," is located on the scenic shores of the Beaufort Sea, 160 km (100 miles) south of the permanent polar ice cap in the Arctic Ocean. This is a renowned bone carving and fur centre famous for its unique ice pingos, ice-cored hills created by the heaving of permafrost. "Tuk" (as northerners call it) became a settlement about 1934 with the transfer of the Hudson's Bay Company supply post from Herschel Island. The more traditional pursuits of trapping, whaling, sealing and reindeer herding have been outstripped by oil related activity as the economic base. There is considerable wage employ-

TUNGSTEN (pop. 506)

This is a mining centre in the Flat River-Nahanni area, located amid spectacular mountain scenery. An RCMP post is located here. Trans-North Turbo Air has applied for a licence to operate a scheduled air service from Whitehorse, Yukon. Warm springs are located at the end of the road past the community. Location 61°59'N 128°15'W.

WHALE COVE (pop. 203)

Although the Whale Cove area was first explored by Captain Thomas Button in 1613, it was not set up until 1959. The present economy is based on seal hunting, fur, fishing and caribou hunting. Accommodation is available. Community services include a community radio, arts and crafts centre and nursing station. Scheduled air service is provided via Calm Air out of Rankin Inlet. Location: 62°11'N 92°36'W.



Yellowknife, the capital of the Territories.

ment from offshore oil explorations and Tuk is a transportation base for High Arctic communities. Reindeer (the herd numbers 10,000) are harvested twice a year and the meat is used for both northern and southern markets while the horns are exported to the Orient for the manufacture of medicine. Other attractions include the restored "Our Lady of Lourdes" mission boat and the unique sod hut museum. Scheduled air service is via Kenn Borek Air from Inuvik. An ice road along the Mackenzie River is open to traffic from early January until late April. Information and slides on offshore exploration activities available at Canmar information centre. Community services include RCMP, radio, TV, nursing station, curling rink, arena, gas and garage service. Accommodation and meals are available at three local hotels. Reindeer steaks and other foods are available at the Reindeer Grill. Location: 69°27'N 133°02'W.

WRIGLEY (pop. 163)

Originally called Fort Wrigley, this community was first established in 1877, some 39 km (24 miles) upstream from its present locale. The local co-op is operating visitor accommodation in log cabins equipped with full facilities. Hunting, trapping and fishing are the basis of the economy of this picturesque community, with its log cabins, tall trees, meat smoking over fires, and its location on a high bank overlooking the Mackenzie River. Community services include a nursing station, radio (1280 KHz), and movies. Scheduled air service is via Simpson Air out of Fort Simpson. The settlement has an unimproved airstrip. Location: 63°16'N 123°37'W.

YELLOWKNIFE (pop. 9,918)

Capital of the N.W.T. since 1967, Yellowknife is a modern, fast-growing city — the largest community in the North-

west Territories. Located on the north shore of Great Slave Lake, the city has become a favorite spot for campers, sports and fishing enthusiasts and tourists who arrive to enjoy the rugged rock landscape and lakes that dot the surrounding countryside.

Samuel Hearne was the first white explorer to visit the Yellowknife area in 1771. Once the home of the Yellowknife Indians, the area has since been occupied by the Dogrib Indians of the Dene nation. White settlers did not come to Yellowknife until 1934, when visible gold was first discovered on its shores. Since those days, the city has grown through many stages. From a gold boom town in the 1930s to nearly a ghost town during the late war years, when six of the operating mines closed down. A second major gold discovery in 1945 started another gold rush. Today, the city is located between two gold mines: Cominco and Giant Yellowknife. (Summer tours of both mines are offered, but book early.) Gold made this city but Yellowknife has developed into a thriving centre for business, industry and the offices of local, territorial and federal governments.

A great way to explore Yellowknife is by foot. The Bush Pilot's monument in the community's colorful Old Town affords a beautiful vista of the town and surrounding waters. See the fascinating variety of housing, everything from tents to cabins to houses clinging to cliffsides. For the motorist, the Ingraham Trail leads into the bush for dozens of fishing, hiking and camping opportunities.

The Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre features displays of northern lifestyles and the environment. On Kam Lake Road at the south end of town visitors can see a unique project aiming to preserve the rare Eskimo dog ("kingmik"). This colony of 100 dogs of a breed indigenous to the North is part of the Eskimo Dog Research Foundation at Bowspringer Kennels.

Drivers can reach Yellowknife via Highway 3 of the Mackenzie Road System, which connects to Alberta highways. Those who wish to fly in can use scheduled air service provided by Pacific Western. Bus connections to Edmonton and Hay River depart three days a week. Three hotels and three motels offer accommodation with a total of over 450 rooms. Meal service is available in the hotels and there are also several restaurants and entertainment spots to choose from. Community services include RCMP, radio (1240 and 1340 KHz), TV, hospital, arena, curling rink, tennis courts, bowling, golf course, rifle range, indoor pool, twin cinema, laundromat, gas and garage service and numerous liquor outlets. Chamber of Commerce information centre is open late May to early September. TravelArctic's information centre is open year-round on 50th St. Location: 62°27'N 114°21'W.

COMING EVENTS



The Eskimo one hand reach.

Unless otherwise noted, these are annual events; however, dates change from year to year. Sponsors of events and attractions are invited to send information for the next edition of this guide.

March

Fort Resolution

Winter Carnival. Every March dog-mushers arrive at this South Slave community to compete for the second richest purse in N.W.T. dog team races. The 96-kilometre (60 mile) course is run over two days. Back in town, carnival goers participate in snowshoe, snowmobile and foot races, tea boiling contests, wood chopping and log sawing contests. There is also the popular weight-pulling contest for dogs. **Write:** Recreation Committee, Fort Resolution Settlement Council, Fort Resolution, N.W.T.

Fort Simpson

Beaver Tail Jamboree. Snowmobile racing, snowshoe racing, tea boiling contest, broomball and hockey tournaments, bingo, drum dance, feast and plenty of winter sports.

Fort Smith

Wood Buffalo Frolics. The Wood-choppers Ball, otherwise known as the Muffaloose Frolics, is a mid-March highlight of this annual celebration of the rites of spring. Northern games include tea boiling contests, log chopping and muskrat skinning in addition to the usual favorites of hockey, skiing, snowmobile racing, and other sports. When the sun goes down, carnival-goers whoop it up at the bingo, casino and variety show. **Write:** Fort Smith Lions Club, Box 175, Fort Smith, N.W.T. X0E 0P0.

Fitz-Smith Ski-a-thon. Cross country skiers can go on a 40 km tour from Fort Fitzgerald along the historic Portage Trail to Fort Smith. **Write:** President, Ft. Smith Ski Club, Ft. Smith, N.W.T.

Hay River

Ookpik Carnival. There will be a dog race, snowmobile races, indoor and outdoor games and a hockey tournament the third weekend in March.

Inuvik

International Bonspiel. Curl inside the Arctic Circle. Rinks from all over Canada and Alaska come to Inuvik for this event, held in late March. For information, **contact:** President, Inuvik Curling Club, Box 1631, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0.

Norman Wells

Winter Carnival. Events include: community dances, dinners, cross-country skiing, snowshoeing, snowmobile races, log sawing, tea boiling and many other events for the entire family. Last week of March.

Wrigley

Moccasin Carnival. Come see us for some northern hospitality. We'll have dog and snowmobile races, log sawing contests, dancing and a jigging and fiddling contest in the second or third week of March.

Yellowknife

Caribou Carnival and Championship Dog Derby. Winters don't stand a chance when Yellowknifers rally for their annual Caribou Carnival. A solid week of entertainment in late March; includes contests of igloo building, log sawing, Indian wrestling, tea boiling, snowshoeing, skiing and lots more. A Carnival Capers show will feature a local talent and skit revue, starring northern celebrities. This is also the time for the Canadian Championship Dog Derby race that attracts dog mushers from across North America. The

three-day, 240 km (150-mile) race on Great Slave Lake offers \$20,000 in prize money for mushers. **Write:** Recreation Department, City Hall, Box 580, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0.

April

Eastern Arctic

Hamlet Days. Local municipal holidays featuring races and northern games are held in communities throughout the area. The holiday, commemorating the settlements' incorporation as a hamlet, is different for each locality. Most are held the first week of April.

Fort McPherson

Peel River Jamboree. Held annually the weekend after Easter. Events include: foot, snowshoe, skidoo and dogsled races, tea boiling, pudding eating, log sawing, feasts, jigging contests and dances.

Frobisher Bay

Toonik Tyme. The arrival of spring in Frobisher Bay is marked by a carnival. This week-long fiesta is filled with contests in seal hunting, igloo building, dog races, snowmobile races and many events for the youth of the community. The highlight of Toonik Tyme is the crowning of Mr. & Mrs. Toonik.

Inuvik

Top of the World Ski Championships. Powder snow, blue skies and midnight sun make this town the capital of cross-country skiing. Races on groomed tracks for all classes draw skiers from the Mackenzie District and other parts of western Canada for this Easter weekend event. Unlimited touring on the tundra also beckons the outdoors enthusiast. **Write:** Peggy Curtis, Box 1666, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0.

Pine Point

Karnival Kapers. Celebration of the end of winter activities include displays, nail pounding and log sawing contests, snowmobile races, dances and a hockey tournament.

Rankin Inlet

Rankin Inlet Snowmobile Race. This will be the sixth year of the annual event featuring a gruelling cross-country test of man and machine from Rankin Inlet around Thompson Island for 10 laps across frozen sea ice and rugged tundra. Oval races, old men's races and events for women and teens as well as a dance at night to celebrate the winners are also highlights. **Write:** President, Rankin Inlet Snowmobile Association, Rankin Inlet, N.W.T. X0C 0G0.

Tuktoyaktuk

Beluga Jamboree. Inuit games, skidoo races, log sawing, chisel throwing, and drum dances.

Yellowknife

Annual Sportsmen's Spiel. This Easter weekend event includes a 64-rink spiel and cash prizes in the range of \$20,000. **Write:** Yellowknife Curling Club, Box 2002, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0.

May

Sachs Harbour

White Fox Jamboree. Dancing, seal skinning, snowmobiling, rifle shooting and maybe even a game or two of blanket toss.

Cambridge Bay

Umingmuk Frolics. Snowmobile races, broomball, foot races, Eskimo games, bingo and dances highlight this three-day event.

June

Hay River

Hub of the North Marathon. On June 22, the longest day of the year. The 26 mile, 385 yard out and back loop route goes through Hay River and along Great Slave Lake. Sponsored by the Hub newspaper and the Lions Club. **Write:** Chris Brodeur, The Hub, Hay River, N.W.T.

Holman

Kingalik Jamboree. Seal skinning, bannock making and Arctic crafts are all part of the fun when Inuit and friends gather for three days of festivities at the Kingalik Jamboree.

Pine Point

Pine Days. Features parade, women's invitational ball tournament, dancing, golf tournament, children's races, pancake breakfast. Third weekend of June.

Yellowknife

Annual Midnight Golf Tournament. Thieving ravens that steal well-placed chip shots off the sand "greens" are only one of the legendary hazards awaiting golfers at this all-night annual event. Join local golf nuts and visiting celebrities in this rollicking social event that only starts at midnight. **Write:** Harvard Budgeon of the Yellowknife Inn, tourney sponsors, Box 490, Yellowknife, N.W.T. The tournament can handle only individual entries, or small groups.

Canada Week Celebrations, June 21-July 1. Watch the septic tank races, car-

nival, pie eating, pillow fighting, band, parade and the ball tournament during the longest days of the northern summer.

Folk on the Rocks. A three day event during the longest summer days in late June features Inuit and Dene performers — throat singers, drum dancers, fiddlers — as well as folk artists from the N.W.T., Yukon, southern Canada and the U.S.A. Craft displays include native handicrafts. The open air concert also includes workshops. Phone (403) 920-2058.

July

Northern Games. Mid-July. An annual summer festival of traditional Inuit and Indian sports, dances, drumming, competitions, displays, crafts and the popular Good Woman Contest, where northern women show their skills at animal skinning, bannock baking, sewing and other "bush skills." Visitors are welcome to join northerners from Alaska, Yukon, Labrador and the Northwest Territories. **Write:** Northern Games Association, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0.

Fort Simpson

Canada Day. The Sir Alexander Mackenzie Canoe Derby is the main event in the July 1 celebrations at this community at the confluence of the Liard and Mackenzie Rivers.

Frobisher Bay

Canada Day Celebrations. Seal skinning, arctic sports, bicycle races, softball games, craft displays, a community feast and games for the youth are the order of the day.

Hay River

Canada Day Celebrations. Raft races, children's games, men's softball tournament.

Tuktoyaktuk

Tuk Cup. Annual Golf Tournament at the world's most northerly golf course. The Tuktoyaktuk Golf Club Midnight Swingers play every year on a nine-hole regulation size golf course with its incomparable sand "browns." The course is on an island in Tuktoyaktuk harbor. Tournament is held in the third week of July. **Write:** Secretary, Tuktoyaktuk Golf Club, Tuktoyaktuk, N.W.T. X0E 1C0. Tel: (403) 977-2321.

Southern Mackenzie

Dene Celebrations. Tentatively scheduled for one of the Great Slave Lake communities in mid-July. This is an annual gathering of the native people from all over the southern part of the ter-

ritories. Tea dances, handgames, log sawing, canoe races, and a baseball tournament are some of the features of this 3-4 day event. **Write:** Dene Celebrations Committee, Rae-Edzo, N.W.T. X0E 0Y0. Tel: (403) 371-3500 or -3171.

August

Fort Liard

Sports Day, first weekend of August. Canoe and foot races, horseshoe tournament, greased pole climbing, corn roast.

Fort Providence

Mackenzie Daze. Raft races, canoe races, handgames, baseball, bingo and dances highlight this local holiday.

Fort Resolution

Deninoo Days. A day of sports and games is highlighted by a community picnic on historic Mission Island held on August 15.

Whale Cove

Keewatin Regional Summer Festival. Everyone turns out for this four-day celebration involving residents of the Keewatin. Events include traditional activities such as tea-boiling, one-foot-high-kick, ear-pull and harpoon throwing. Music, drum dancing, handicrafts and performing arts are also featured. **Contact:** Keewatin Inuit Association, Rankin Inlet, N.W.T. Tel: (819) 645-2800.

September

Hay River

Fall Fair and World Championship Fiddling and Jigging Contest, first part of September. Judging of handicrafts, baking, preserves, garden produce, house and garden plants. There are also displays by local organizations and businesses.

Yellowknife

Country Fair North of Sixty. Judges rate the entries of plants and flowers, baking and handicrafts. The long hours of sunlight produce some whopping vegetables.

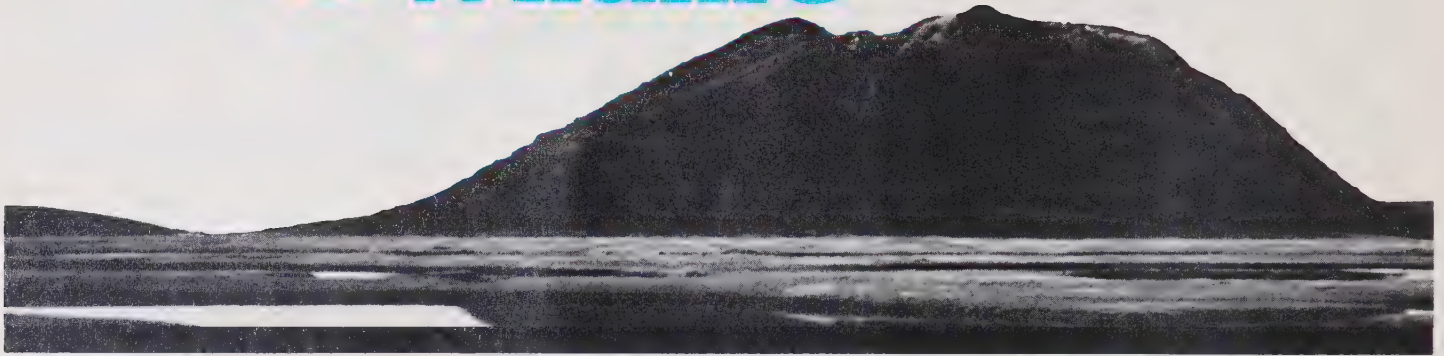
October

Inuvik

Delta Daze. Thanksgiving weekend in October is reserved for one last celebration before the coming of shorter days and snow. Street dances, a parade of floats, games of chance, second annual honey bucket race, a barbecue and truck raffle are part of the fun.

Geography & Wildlife

A pingo near Tuktoyaktuk.



Land

There are four general regions in the N.W.T. Travellers driving North on the Mackenzie Highway into the N.W.T. pass through the **Western Plains**, a vast sedimentary basin which used to be a huge inland sea covering most of the prairie provinces.

This area of Paleozoic limestone is occasionally interspersed with younger Cretaceous rock. An 80 km (50 mi.) long fossilized coral reef west of Enterprise is one remnant of this ancient sea. The reef forms a high ridge overlooking Great Slave Lake where rockhounds can find fossilized coral. And fossils are found along the Hay River valley north of the two falls.

Rockhounds can also find good samples of sphalerite, galena, calcite and sulphur near Pine Point, the site of a lead-zinc mine.

Thick stands of white spruce, poplars, and birch forest the relatively flat country. Tamarack and black spruce grow in the wetter areas and jackpine prefer the sandier soils.

Once drivers cross Frank's Channel near Fort Rae, the countryside becomes the **Precambrian Shield**, a rugged, rocky area with shorter stands of evergreens, birch and poplar. Patches of muskeg and numerous lakes interspersed with bare and rocky outcrops become the predominant feature of the countryside. Vegetation grows in hollows or clefts in the rock where fertile soil has collected. A variety of low bushes, many bearing edible berries, grow on the thick spongy muskeg.

The lake-dotted Shield begins north of Great Bear Lake and roughly follows the treeline southeast into the provinces. The North Arm of Great Slave Lake is the southwestern boundary of this zone. The Precambrian Shield is composed of an-

cient igneous rocks. Some of the lava flows become very apparent when viewed from the air. It is also a potentially mineral-rich area. Gold and silver are mined in the Shield. Rockhounds can find large crystals of quartz near Rae; visible gold may be found in "Toby" or black quartz veins near the Yellowknife gold mines. Amethyst, lithium, kyanite, staurolite, garnet and andalusite crystals have been found in the Prosperous Lake area near Yellowknife.

Large crystals of tremolite up to 60 cm (two feet) can be found near Regina Bay in Great Slave Lake's East Arm. Native, leaf and dendritic silver are common near the silver mines on Great Bear Lake. Ruby silver, argentite and native bismuth have also been found in the area but are more rare.

The **Barrenlands**, geologically known as Kazan Plateau, comprise the quiet heart of the N.W.T. covering most of the central Keewatin region. The vegetation is similar to the tundra, generally treeless but there are occasional pockets of lush vegetation and large trees such as in the Thelon Game Sanctuary. The gently rolling hills have recently become a focal point for uranium exploration. Shrub willow and birch line the rocky streams and rivers near the treeline. Further north, the bushes are no more than knee high.

Trappers, originally drawn by the wealth of white fox pelts, still trap and live in the area. There are no communities in the Barrens. The closest is Baker Lake. The many fish-filled rivers and lakes are lined with canoe routes.

The fourth general area of the N.W.T. makes up the **Coastal Plains** and the Arctic Islands. Physical features range from the ice-capped peaks and fiord-slashed coastlines of Baffin Island to the tundra (or flat, gravel plains) near Hudson Bay.

Flat bush berries, stunted by the high winds, grow in protected nooks and

valleys. The most striking feature of the Arctic is the semi-desert — an expanse of rock strewn flats — which is transformed into a rock garden every summer. Needed moisture comes from the melting snowdrifts. Colourful grasses and lichens provide excellent grazing for large herds of caribou.

Rockhounds can find fossilized trees and large garnet crystals on some of the Arctic Islands. Excellent samples of native copper, bornite and chalcopyrite are found in the Coppermine area.

Soapstone is widespread but mineral rights to known deposits have been reserved for the exclusive use of the Inuit who use the rock extensively in their arts and crafts.

Information

Additional information may be found in Volume 1 of "Rock and Mineral Collecting in Canada, A Catalogue of Canadian Minerals," and in a brief paper on mineral collecting in the N.W.T. both available from the **Resident Geologist, Box 1500, Yellowknife, N.W.T.**



The canyons of the Nahanni River.

Mammals

Visitors can observe a wide range of plant and animal species in the various regions of the Northwest Territories. Naturalists have identified at least 280 species of birds, 80 different mammals and 2,000 varieties of plants. New finds are continually being added to the lists. Large concentrations of animals occur where the growing conditions are best, such as in river deltas, lowlands and where ocean currents mix. Then there are areas which are oases compared to the surrounding region such as near the confluence of Thelon and Hanbury Rivers in the Thelon Game Sanctuary; Lake Hazen on Ellesmere Island and Wager Bay in the Keewatin.

Generally, northern vegetation is much smaller and takes longer to reach maturity than in southern Canada. As a result animals need a wider range to survive. However, anyone who ventures into the open country away from settled areas stands a good chance of seeing many species. Moose and bear are sometimes seen alongside roads.

Caribou still travel in great migrating herds, stretching to the horizon and beyond, sometimes reaching numbers of more than 100,000. This, one of the last great natural spectacles, is a scene visible to few but the native people who still depend on the caribou as a major food source. Caribou range from the Arctic Islands, to the barren grounds, woodlands and Mackenzie Mountains.

Domesticated reindeer, similar in appearance to caribou, were introduced into the Mackenzie Delta from Alaska in the early part of this century. Recently the reindeer from the Tuktoyaktuk region have also been transplanted to the Belcher Islands and Coates Island in Hudson Bay. Reindeer are common in the Tuktoyaktuk region and now provide a commercial source of food for local people. If the Dempster Highway were completed to Tuk, the herd would be visible to highway travellers.

Moose are common in the forested areas and these great animals can often be seen feeding in the ponds and rivers of the Mackenzie Valley.

Bears of Canada's North include the black bear, common in timbered areas of the N.W.T.; the grizzly, found in the Mackenzie Mountains; the barrenground grizzly of the tundra and the polar bear which is found along the Arctic coastlines as far south as James Bay in Hudson Bay.

Highway travellers can view large herds of **buffalo** in Wood Buffalo National Park near Fort Smith. The huge animals, larger cousin of the Plains buffalo, once



Walrus

roamed along the southern shores of Great Slave Lake as far west as the Liard Valley. The two species — the wood and plains buffalo — interbred when six thousand plains buffalo were shipped to the park in 1920 from Wainwright, Alberta. There are about 7,000 of the hybrid buffalo within the park and others are found along the Slave River. A small herd was transplanted near Fort Providence and now numbers about 300. Another small herd has been transplanted recently to the Liard Valley.

Muskoxen, shaggy, prehistoric-looking animals, are found primarily in the Arctic islands; however, some may be seen in the Bathurst Inlet area and in the Thelon Game Sanctuary. There may be as many as 12,000 muskoxen in Canada's Arctic.

The wooded areas of the N.W.T. also harbor wolf, fox, wolverine, mink, marten, lynx, otter, weasel, beaver, muskrat, rabbits and squirrels.

The Arctic ground squirrel and the lemming are common in most locations throughout the Arctic.

Canada's Arctic is also one of the few places in the world with an abundance of **marine mammals**. From mid-July to the end of August, seals, whales and walrus are in their breeding grounds off the coast of Baffin Island and in Hudson Bay although they can be seen in High Arctic areas as well.

Marine mammals have been the essence of survival to the Netsilik Eskimos of Canada's Arctic, providing food, clothing (from the skins) and fuel (the fat was burned in stone vessels for heating and cooking). Even today, meat, skins and walrus ivory are used for food, clothing and handicrafts.

Birds

Birds are a familiar summer sight almost everywhere in the N.W.T. Birdwatchers can find the breeding grounds of ducks, swans and shorebirds along the mainland coast and in the High Arctic Islands.

Most of the breeding grounds are located in remote places and are relatively inaccessible to tourists. But chances are good of seeing a large proportion of the 280 known species near the coastal communities and at the one naturalist lodge inside the Arctic Circle.

A large variety of ducks nest in the southern N.W.T. They can be easily spotted on the roadside ponds and lakes. The N.W.T. is also home to North America's only colony of river-nesting white pelicans which are found at the Slave River rapids near Fort Smith.

Within the boundaries of Wood Buffalo National Park — and completely restricted to tourists — are the breeding grounds of the whooping crane. Only 100 of the birds still remain in the wild. Sandhill cranes are more common and can occasionally be seen along the highways.

Other endangered and threatened species include the peregrine falcon, gyrfalcon, Ross' Goose and Eskimo Curlew, the rarest of North American birds. Only 17 curlew are known to exist.

Seabirds include the thick-billed murre, fulmars, kittiwakes, auks, black guillemots and ivory gulls. Some bird species normally found on the arctic coast also nest in isolated spots on Great Slave and Great Bear lakes.

Bald and Golden Eagles are common in the N.W.T. The more numerous species include hawks, owls, jaegers, gulls and swallows.

Ravens and both species of ptarmigan can be seen year round in the N.W.T.



Parasitic jaeger

History

The Northwest Territories is a vast land with a small population. But man has travelled its length and breadth for 10,000 years. Some passed through in north-to-south migration to more temperate areas of the continent. Others, moving west to east, adapted themselves and their ways of life to the climate and terrain of the North. Their descendants, the native people, are here today. Still others were the pioneers from the south who moved northward and they, too, adjusted to northern life. These people were mainly of European and Metis (Indian and European) extraction.

Textbooks call the original people of the North "Indian and Eskimo," but today they usually prefer to be known as "Dene" (den'ay) and "Inuit" (in'oo-it), words meaning "the people" in their own languages.

Over the centuries, these ancient people left behind evidence of their passage through the land — evidence, not in words of written history, but in the form of artifacts which they lost, discarded when they changed camps, buried with their dead, or damaged in the making. Pieces of skin clothing or footwear, weapons, tools, amulets, children's toys and building materials remain on the land to tell us something of the history of the original users.

12-10,000 years ago: The glaciers that covered most of the N.W.T. during the last ice age began to retreat toward Hudson Bay. Earlier, ancestors of the American Indians entered Alaska from Siberia and moved south to central North America, probably through ice-free corridors along the mountains.

10-8,000 years ago: The Mackenzie River area, Great Slave and Great Bear Lakes and the western Arctic coast were free of ice. Small bands of Indian hunters, probably closely related to the buffalo hunters who occupied the plains area at that time, moved into the ice-free land and followed the migrating caribou north as far as the Arctic coast.

8-6,000 years ago: The last remains of the glaciers finally melted, probably in the vicinity of Hudson Bay. The forest became established close to its present position as the climate became warmer. In the forest area, various groups of Indians began to develop hunting and fishing patterns which allowed them to live under the new conditions. Some still followed the caribou into the tundra during the summer, but probably returned to winter in the forest where fuel and game were available.

6-4,000 years ago: The ancestors of the Inuit crossed to Alaska from Siberia and began moving eastward across the Canadian Arctic. These people learned how to hunt sea mammals, especially the seal, to provide themselves with food and fuel so that they could winter on the Arctic tundra and on the sea ice.

4-1,000 years ago: Dene cultures continued to develop in the forest zone. The tundra zone of the Canadian Arctic was occupied by an Inuit people who appear to have become extinct about 1,000 years ago.

1,000 years ago to present: The ancestors of the various Dene groups became established in the areas which they now occupy. A new wave of Inuit moved eastward from Alaska, encouraged by a milder climate and the development of techniques that allowed them to kill whales. The descendants of these people, reduced by a period of harsh climate about 300 years ago, are the present Inuit of the N.W.T.

The Contact Period

About 400 years ago Martin Frobisher, in an attempt to find a northern route to the Orient, penetrated northward up Davis Strait and explored the bay now bearing his name. Although it is certain European fishermen had previously made contact with the Inuit of the eastern coast, Frobisher's encounter with them is the earliest recorded.

At this period, also, European fishermen came to harvest the rich fishing grounds of northern coastal waters. Whalers sought the whale for oil, and sporadic contact with the Inuit was made when storms and mishaps forced them ashore. What historians call the "Contact Period" had begun for northern people.



Igloos are still used by hunters when travelling on the land during winter.

Nearly two centuries later the search for minerals (this time copper), combined with the demand for fur, prompted Samuel Hearne (1769-72) to penetrate overland from Hudson Bay westward as far north as the mouth of the Coppermine River and south into the eastern Great Slave Lake country. Hearne was soon followed by other explorers, such as Pond, Mackenzie and Leroux.

Within two centuries, non-native penetration of the Canadian Arctic had been made in the east, centre and west; the great "Fur Rush" was on. A host of explorers, adventurers and traders were putting the Arctic on the maps of the continent. However, decades passed before modern methods of travel and mapping completed the picture.



An Inuit hunter glasses for seal. (photo by Jan Swietlik)

On the heels of the fur traders and whalers came the missionaries, Roman Catholic and Anglican, in the early 19th Century. Churches were built and services conducted in the native tongue. Elementary schools began to give the people some knowledge of the world beyond the North's boundaries. Native people were gradually abandoning their nomadic way of life and turning from a subsistence economy. The fur trade provided their first income through barter for trade goods. With the establishment of fur trade posts, missions, schools, clinics and (in the past 50 years) modern transportation and communications services, northern people have moved to 64 communities. Now almost all the Inuit and Dene people have permanent homes, but for part of the year many still live off the land, often spending months at a time in remote tent camps.

Government

For centuries, the North was governed from afar, first by Britain and then the Hudson's Bay Company. After Confederation in 1867, responsibility for the North was transferred to the Canadian government. At that time the N.W.T. was much bigger than now: it included large parts of Labrador, Quebec, Ontario,

Manitoba and all of the Yukon, Saskatchewan and Alberta. It wasn't until 1920 that the territories assumed their present boundaries.

For many more years the North was governed exclusively from Ottawa, with the Royal Canadian Mounted Police doing the administering for an absentee territorial council. Originally an appointed council, in 1951 three members were elected. Now all 22 members are chosen by their constituents. In 1967 the capital was moved from Fort Smith to Yellowknife and, at the same time, the Commissioner and many federal civil servants moved north to join the fledgling territorial government. The Council and Commissioner, who is appointed, are responsible to the federal minister of Indian Affairs and Northern Development.

HISTORIC SITES

The heritage of the Northwest Territories and its people is truly unique and rich. Sadly, some of the artifacts and evidence of that long heritage are being stolen, disturbed and destroyed by people who have no respect for archaeological sites.

If you get the chance to visit wilderness areas, be on the lookout for traces of man — a stone arrowhead, a ring of stones used to hold down a caribou skin tent, a stone kudlik (Inuit lamp). It's possible you'll come across something and can help unfold history by preserving these sites. Please report any archaeological site you may notice to: Director, Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2L9. The following information would be useful: (1) Location of the site on a topographical map if possible, or in relation to rivers, roads, and

other easily defined features. (2) The appearance of the site. Is it buried or on the surface; are there any structures, and if so, what do they resemble?

Remember: The removal of artifacts and the destruction or disturbance of archaeological sites are forbidden under the N.W.T. Archaeological Sites Regulations.



An abandoned Indian trapper's cabin near Fort Resolution.

N.W.T. MUSEUM PROGRAM

The Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre in Yellowknife was opened by Prince Charles on April 3, 1979.

Here the visitor is able to look back through history at the customs and traditions of the Inuit, Dene, and the Metis and Euro-Canadian explorers, traders and settlers who followed them. Other exhibits depict the North's unique plant and animal life.

For further information, contact:

The Director
Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre
Government of the N.W.T.
Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2L9

OTHER MUSEUMS

Kinniktuahavik Nitenucha
Tsut Gwishiquina Wee
Akklavik, N.W.T.

Northern Life Museum
Fort Smith, N.W.T.

Nunatta Sunaqtangit Museum Society
Frobisher Bay, N.W.T.

Holman Historical Society
Holman, N.W.T.

Inummarit Cultural Association
Igloodik, N.W.T.

Norman Wells Historical Society
Norman Wells, N.W.T.

Pelly Bay Museum
Pelly Bay, N.W.T.

Museum of Banks Island
Sachs Harbour, N.W.T.

Tuktoyaktuk Sod House Museum
Tuktoyaktuk, N.W.T.

Arts & Crafts



Jessie Oonark, a famous Baker Lake artist. (photo by Stan Zazelenchuk)

The arts and crafts of the Northwest Territories reflect a way of life very different from that familiar to most of us. Many are crafted from raw quills, bone, stone or ivory.



Some reveal a unique adaptation of materials provided by early traders. All show the ingenuity and skill of hand-crafting. They also provide an insight into the way of life from which they have evolved, a way of life physically rugged yet sensitive to the beauty and harmony of nature.

Many of the fine crafts are useful as well as beautiful. The higher quality art objects — sculpture, prints and wall hangings — have received world-wide acclaim. They are sought after by collectors and connoisseurs and have an acknowledged investment value.

Selection

Look for an item that appeals to you personally if you want it to remain a treasured possession.

Retailers will be glad to share with you their knowledge of the product they sell. Learn as much as you can about your purchase: where it came from, who made it, how it was made, what materials

were used. This will add to your depth of appreciation and provide you with a meaningful memento of your visit to the Northwest Territories.

Visitors from the United States should note there are import restrictions on certain furs, skins, and especially on ivory and whalebone products. If you plan to buy any of these products, please contact — before you go — the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Dept. of the Interior, Washington, D.C. 20240. U.S. visitors may, however, import other genuine works of art such as stone carvings and Eskimo prints and they are exempt from U.S. customs duties.

If you require more information about the arts and crafts of the Northwest Territories, or where to buy them in the south, contact the Supervisor of Arts & Crafts, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2L9, **or** Canadian Arctic Producers Limited, P.O. Box 4130, Station E, Ottawa, Ont., K1S 5B2. Tel: (613) 521-4123.

Prints

The Inuit have also achieved fame as print-makers. The first prints, made in Cape Dorset, were done from stencils cut in sealskin. Relief printing by cutting away the background on stone blocks and transferring the inked image directly from stone to paper was found to be an easier method and is now widely used. Many printers still use the stencil method, but with man-made materials. Some artists use the silk-screen method, essentially a stencil technique. Others are skilled in lithography and copper engraving.



Fur Garments, Weaving

Seal garments are made all across the North. People of the Mackenzie Delta use the abundant muskrat to make beautiful coats and parkas. (U.S. customs regulations restrict the import of the skins of marine mammals.) Finger-woven belts of wool have been made in the Arctic since the introduction of wool yarn. The skill and knowledge used in their manufacture has been expanded to the production of loomed articles of great variety: blankets, scarves, ties and beautiful tapestries. The techniques of off-loom weaving, braiding and macrame are also used with great skill to produce unique wall-hangings. A workshop in Fort Smith produces woven materials suitable for clothing as well as custom-made garments. Weaving workshops in Pangnirtung and Frobisher Bay produce clothing as well as art items.



Eskimo Parkas, Sewn Goods and Footwear

Available in almost every community are articles of clothing made for local use. They are specifically fashioned for a very cold dry climate but find use in southern winters also. One of the most appealing features of northern clothing is the beautiful and intricate decoration often applied with beads or embroidery.

Dene Artifacts, Birchbark Items and Garments

Articles of great variety for use in everyday life are produced by the Dene craftsmen and women of the N.W.T. Many are still made from natural materials: moose or caribou hide and northern furs. The outstanding feature of Dene clothing is the beautiful decoration in embroidery, beadwork, porcupine quills and colored moose and caribou hair.



Stone Sculpture

The stone sculpture of the Inuit is world famous. The subjects depicted have a broad range: from activities of day-to-day life to mythology and the world of the imagination. Although soapstone is usually associated with sculpture from the Arctic, the majority of work is done in serpentinite, a harder relative of soapstone.



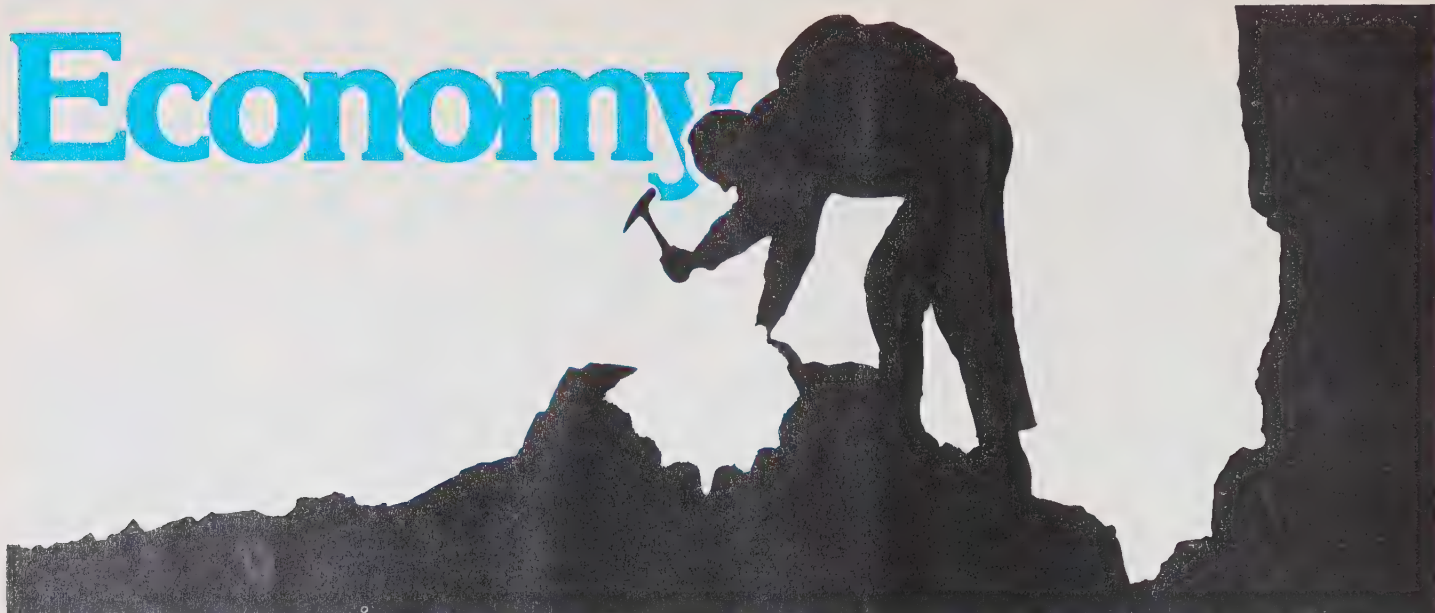
Ivory Carving

Inuit have used ivory since very earliest times to fashion tools and charms. The ivory is obtained from walrus, consequently most carving comes from settlements near the waters inhabited by walrus — particularly the northeast coast of Hudson Bay and the east side of the Melville Peninsula. The Ikaluit Sanavigat, a jewelry workshop in Frobisher Bay incorporates ivory carving into their gold and silver work. (U.S. Customs regulations restrict the entry of ivory products.)

Whalebone Carving

Whalebone has always been used to fashion tools. In some areas where stone was in short supply people turned to whalebone for the carving of figures. The bones are usually from the carcasses of large whales killed during the height of the 19th century whaling activities since large whales are rarely killed now. As the existing stocks of bone are used, carvings in this material are becoming increasingly rare. (U.S. customs regulations restrict the import of whalebone carving.)

Economy



Mining

The Northwest Territories' present day economy is largely based on mining and the search for minerals including oil and gas. The country's diversified geology has attracted the attention of both prospectors and rockhounds.

Europeans were first drawn to the Arctic by the lure of minerals. Martin Frobisher in 1476 established a "fool's" gold mine on Baffin Island. Samuel Hearne walked from Churchill across the Barrenlands to present day Coppermine on the Arctic Coast to investigate rumours of a potential mine in 1780.

It was only 50 years ago that mining developed in a big way in the N.W.T. Uranium, silver and gold were discovered on Great Bear Lake and the area became the centre of mining activity. Echo Bay, now a silver producer, provided the uranium for the first atomic bombs during the World War II.

Subsequent gold discoveries near Yellowknife spurred the building of several mines. Con and Giant are still operating today. Two more gold mines, at Gordon and Contwoyto Lakes, north of Yellowknife are being put into production soon.

Prospectors drawn through the N.W.T. on their way to the Yukon gold fields in 1898 discovered the lead-zinc potential of Pine Point. But the mine, now the world's largest open pit lead zinc mine, was not developed until the 1960s.

Nanisivik, on Baffin Island, became the world's most northerly mine when it opened in 1975. However, the Polaris mine on Little Cornwallis Island near Resolute, will gain that distinction when it begins producing lead-zinc in 1985.

A tungsten mine operates on the Yukon-N.W.T. border at Tungsten and another

is planned for the MacMillan Pass along the old Canol Road in the Mackenzie Mountains. Several major uranium finds have been made in the Keewatin region. And developers are looking to exploit lead-zinc deposits near Hay River and in the Liard Valley.

Oil and Natural Gas

Although there is a substantial supply of oil and natural gas in the territories, figures for proven and potential reserves are not readily available. At present, amid continuing oil and gas exploration activity, only two oil and gas facilities are operating.

Petroleum is produced in the Norman Wells area, where Imperial Oil owns and operates a small refinery — about 2,000 barrels per day — for use within the territories. The Norman Wells field became operational in 1920 and large-scale commercial development took place during the Second World War.

Imperial is now proposing to boost production to 30,000 barrels a day and piping the surplus oil and gas into Alberta by constructing a pipeline along the Mackenzie Valley.

At Pointed Mountain near the N.W.T./B.C. border, a natural gas extraction and processing plant was commissioned in 1972. Natural gas from this plant is transported to the Fort Nelson area and eventually joins the Trans Mountain Pipe Line system in British Columbia. The discovery of major oil and gas fields at Prudhoe Bay on the Alaskan North Slope in 1968 spurred the hunt for oil and gas in northern Canada. In the Mackenzie Delta-Beaufort Sea area, oil was discovered in 1970 and gas somewhat later. Rough estimates indicate proven gas reserves now stand at more than seven trillion cubic feet.

Another area of development potential is in the high Arctic islands. Gas has been discovered on Melville, King Christian



The Norman Wells oil field and refinery produces petroleum products for northern markets. (photo by Wayne Towriss)

and Ellef Ringnes islands, and oil on Cameron and Ellesmere islands.

Renewable Resource Industries

Hunting and trapping are traditional pursuits in the Northwest Territories, whether it's hunting caribou near Aklavik, trapping lynx near Fort Good Hope or sealing in the waters off the Arctic Coast. Fur, worth up to \$4-million, was harvested by trappers in the North during the 1978-79 season. In addition, a substantial number of caribou were taken and used as a dietary staple in many communities in the territories. Hunters' and trappers' associations are active in promoting and advising on wildlife management and resource harvesting programs.

Commercial fishing is centred on Great Slave Lake (whitefish), Cambridge Bay (Arctic char) and at a number of locations in the Keewatin and Baffin regions, where they harvest char, whitefish and trout. Fish-harvesting is monitored by government authorities to ensure that the stock is not depleted.

Lumbering and sawmilling have been active on a small scale for many years in the southern N.W.T. Progress is being made in both the forestry and fishing industries, despite obstacles of slow tree and fish growth rates, high operating costs and distant markets. It attests to the determination and downright stubbornness of the people in these industries, most of whom are permanent northern residents.

Secondary Industry

There is a wide range of secondary industries across the N.W.T., including bakeries, bottlers, printers, handicraft operations and others. The large majority of the population works in the service sector: in government, transportation, utilities, finance and retail.

Tourism

Every year, more and more visitors venture to Canada's Arctic. About one-third are from the United States, with the majority coming from other parts of Canada, drawn to the North to see Canada's last frontier. Modern transportation and expanding tourist accommodation now make it possible for visitors to see and experience life in formerly remote and isolated settlements with exotic names such as Pangnirtung, Tuktoyaktuk or Fort Providence.

Ten years ago, there were only a few hundred visitors coming to the territories and only eight communities with hotels. Today, more than 30,000 tourists criss-cross the N.W.T. where they find accommodation in 30 communities. The



An Inuit (Eskimo) crew prepares to set out to visit fish camps in the longliner.

number of lodges and outfitters has grown from 12 a decade ago to more than 80 now.

Arts and Crafts

Native arts and crafts are in demand both in this country and abroad. It's an important business in the territories, where the sale of everything from sealskin mukluks

to walrus tusk chess sets amounted to more than \$9 million last year.

Co-operatives in many communities handle the promotion and sale of arts and crafts. There are dozens of co-operatives in the N.W.T., employing some 600 people, active not only in arts and crafts, but also in retail marketing, construction, transportation and municipal service contracts.

DRIVING NORTH

Territorial highways are mainly all-weather gravel roads. Five routes connect the communities around Great Slave Lake and the southern part of the Mackenzie Valley with southern Canada via Alberta Highway 35. Another route, the Dempster Highway, connects Mackenzie Delta communities with Dawson, Yukon.

Roads are continually maintained and normally passable in wet weather. Should there be any periods of prolonged heavy rain, you are advised to call 874-3780 in Hay River or call toll-free Zenith 2018 from other N.W.T. communities for information on highway conditions. You can also get travel advice at the Visitor Information Centres on the Mackenzie Highway at the 60th parallel or in Nutuiliue Park near Fort McPherson. All distances and speed limit signs in the N.W.T. are in metric units: kilometres (km) and kilometres per hour (km/h).

The Dempster Route

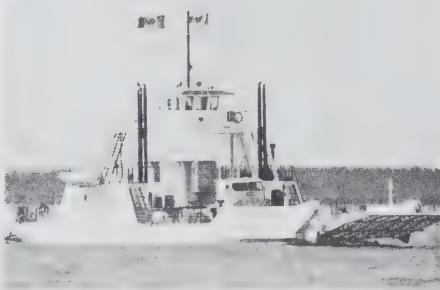
If you plan to travel the Dempster route remember that this is a new highway, just opened in 1979. In the Yukon, it is designated Hwy. 11 and in the N.W.T. it is Hwy. 8. Services are few and far between, so take extra precautions and contact Yukon travel authorities before setting out. There is only one gas stop in the Yukon's 465 km (289-mile) stretch of the Dempster, 93 km (58 miles) from the N.W.T. border. The gravel surface is now complete but the road can become very slippery after heavy rainfall.

After crossing the Yukon-N.W.T. border high in the Richardson Mountains there is a 75 km (47 mile) stretch before reaching the Peel River ferry crossing. Gas, accommodation and meals are available at Fort McPherson; however, there are no further services until Inuvik, 189 km (118 miles) down the road. Before setting out, be sure to check road conditions and the ferry schedule for the Peel River and Arctic Red River crossings by calling 979-3828 in Inuvik or Zenith 2022 from

other N.W.T. communities. During the fall, winter and spring, there will be periods when traffic on the Dempster will be restricted to avoid disturbance of caribou herds west of the Peel River.

Ferry Service

Remember, Highways 1, 3 and 8 cross major rivers. In the summer you drive aboard a large ferry for a free five-to-ten minute trip. In the winter you drive over an ice bridge four to six feet thick. During freeze-up and break-up in fall and spring, there are two-to-six-week periods when ferries and ice bridges are out of service.



The Merv Hardie ferry at the Fort Providence crossing.

Information on ferry schedules for the southern Mackenzie crossings near Fort Simpson and Fort Providence may be obtained by calling (403) 873-7799 in Yellowknife or Zenith 2010 (toll-free) from N.W.T. communities.

Arctic Red River and Peel River Ferries

Ferry service on the Dempster Highway at Arctic Red River and the Peel River crossings operates 12 hours a day during summer. Operations are restricted to

daylight hours in the fall. Please determine the schedule **before** setting out. Ferry service ends due to freeze-up on the Dempster in early October. Ice bridges at the Peel River and Arctic Red River crossings are open for light vehicles in late November and progressively to heavier vehicles as the ice thickens. The ice bridges at these crossings close in April and ferry service begins in mid to late June.

Liard River Ferry

This ferry near Ft. Simpson on Hwy. 1 operates from 8 a.m. to 8 p.m., May through October; crossing time six minutes. Operation in May and October dependent on ice conditions.

During winter an ice bridge is maintained to accommodate vehicles. The ice bridge at this crossing generally closes in mid-April and ferry service begins about mid-May or sooner. Ferry service generally ends in late October and the ice bridge opens for light vehicles in late November. Please note that these are only approximate dates and are subject to weather and ice conditions.

Mackenzie River Ferry

This ferry near Ft. Providence on Hwy. 3 operates from 6 a.m. to midnight, May through November; crossing time eight minutes. Capacity: four trucks or 10 automobiles. Operation in May and November is dependent on ice conditions.

During winter an ice bridge is maintained to accommodate vehicles. At this crossing the ice bridge generally closes in mid-April and ferry service begins in early or mid-May. Ferry service generally ends between mid-November and early December. The ice bridge opens for light vehicles in mid-December.

Fuel and Services

Motorists are cautioned that there are long distances between gasoline and service stops. Gasoline prices average a dollar or more a gallon depending on the distance and cost of haulage from main distribution centres. Remember, too, that because Canada is converting to the metric system some service stations may measure gasoline, oil and tire pressures in metric units.

Unleaded and regular gas is available in all communities on the highway system except for Kakisa and Arctic Red River. Diesel is available in Inuvik, Fort Simpson, Hay River, Yellowknife, Enterprise, Ft. Providence and Ft. Smith. Generally, there are no service stations between communities, so gas up before departing to make sure you reach your destination. Repairs are best performed in Yellowknife. Hay River and Enterprise where mechanics are on duty and a good selection of parts are available. There is a

Road Distances to N.W.T./Yukon Border via Dempster Hwy.

	km	Miles
Dawson	504	315
Dawson Creek	2424	1515
Edmonton	3014	1884
Los Angeles	6034	3771
Vancouver	3730	2331
Whitehorse	957	598

Road Distances to N.W.T. Border via Mackenzie Hwy.

	km	Miles		km	Miles
Calgary	1276	793	Montreal	4734	2942
Chicago	3800	2362	New York	5221	3245
Detroit	4219	2622	Toronto	4582	2848
Edmonton	990	615	Vancouver	2330	1448
Los Angeles	3960	2461	Winnipeg	2357	1465
Minneapolis	3083	1920			

very limited selection of parts and services at other points.

Trailers-Pickup Campers

No special licence is required for a non-resident trailer.

Size permitted:

Over-all length

(car and trailer) 14 m (45 ft.)

Over-all width 3.0 m (10 ft.)

Over-all height (ground up) 3.9 m (13 ft.)

Check with Parks Canada for their requirements, if entering Wood Buffalo National Park.

Trailer loads must be properly balanced. We recommend that a piece of half-inch plywood be screwed to the lower front of trailers to prevent damage from flying gravel. If your vehicle takes parts or tires that are normally hard to find, carry additional spares with you.

Provincial Approach Roads

The Alberta section of the Mackenzie Highway starts at Grimshaw, 465 km (289 miles) south of the N.W.T.-Alberta border. From Edmonton to Grimshaw, the motorist has the choice of two paved routes, one leading north through Westlock and Lesser Slave Lake and the other leading west and north through Whitecourt and Valleyview. The most direct route from Dawson Creek, B.C., to Grimshaw is via Highways 49 and 2, a distance of 214 km (133 miles).

Highway Safety

Whether you are travelling in the winter or the summer, you should take precautions before travelling on N.W.T. highways. You should carry a tow rope or chain; at least one spare tire; an axe and matches; tools; first-aid kit; extra gas, oil, fan belts and fuses; and some extra food such as chocolate bars, canned goods, hard fruit. Summer travellers should carry

insect repellent and water. For winter travel, a snow shovel is recommended, as are a parka, mitts or gloves, boots, warm-up or ski pants and a sleeping bag for each person in the car. Cars and trailers must be in proper condition, with all fluids topped up, tires at recommended pressures and loose wires or connections fastened securely to prevent grabbing on the gravel.



The Dempster Highway opens the Arctic to the road traveller. (photo by Frank Grant)

Gravel Driving Tips

- Minimize dust in your car by closing all windows and using the air conditioner. If your vehicle is not air conditioned; close windows, open vents and turn on the fan to "defrost".
- Do not accelerate excessively when passing another motorist as this can cause small stones to fly into the vehicle you are passing. Speeding up when passing also causes excessive dust.
- When meeting another vehicle, ease off the gas pedal. This is courteous as well as a good safety rule. Your slower speed reduces dust and the possibility of flying gravel.
- Cover your boat if you are trailing it on gravel roads. Rock guards are an important item for vacation trailers and exposed

wiring on all trailers should be enclosed in plastic or a suitable tough material for protection from gravel.

- A rubber mat fastened to the underside of your car's gas tank will prevent damage from gravel. Headlights can be covered with clear plastic protectors specially made for this purpose. A wire mesh or fabric screen will prevent gravel and insect damage to radiators.
- Sliding or skidding on gravel can be prevented by avoiding sudden braking or abrupt steering movements under normal driving conditions. Take a few precautions, and you will have a safe, exciting adventure on our highways.

Highway Holidays

Campgrounds and picnic sites

There are many well-planned campgrounds and day-use sites for picnics along the territorial highway system. They're placed at beauty spots along the way, and include areas for tenting and RV parking, sanitary facilities, picnic tables and covered picnic shelters.

If you're driving the Mackenzie Highway, it's a good idea to inquire at the 60th Parallel Visitor Information Centre about the facilities ahead. The centre is open only from mid-May to the Labor Day weekend in September.

Off-highway, Territorial Parks are located at Pangnirtung, Frobisher Bay, Norman Wells and Fort Norman.

Camping permits are required for using N.W.T. campgrounds. Permits are available from the 60th Parallel Visitor Information Centre, the TravelArctic office in Yellowknife and park officers in Hay River and Yellowknife. Permits are valid

for the year April 1 to March 31 and are required by residents and non-residents of the Northwest Territories. Maximum length of stay in one campground is 14 days a year. Permits cost \$5 for a one night stay or \$25 for the season.

On the Highway System

All parks in this area have firewood, fireplaces, picnic tables and toilets, and are open May 15-Sept. 15, except where otherwise noted below. Additional facilities are listed under each park. Some points of interest along the way are noted.

Highway 1-Alberta/N.W.T. Border to Fort Simpson

60th Parallel km 0 (Mile 0) (campground and picnic site)

This park is adjacent to the Visitor Information centre at the Alberta/N.W.T. border. It overlooks the Hay River and

has 12 campsites and eight day-use areas. Additional facilities include kitchen shelters, drinking water and a dumping station.

Alexandra Falls km 69 (Mile 43) (picnic site only)

This site overlooks the Hay River where it plunges 33 m (109 feet) to form Alexandra Falls. Lookout points have been established along the steep river banks offering ideal vantage points for sightseers and photographers. There are four day-use sites at this park, but picnickers should note that drinking water is not available.

Louise Falls km 75 (Mile 46) (campground and picnic site)

Just downriver from Alexandra Falls, the Hay River plunges another 15 m (50 feet) in a series of steps on its way to Great Slave Lake. Trails lead to viewing areas overlooking the falls and fishing spots at the foot of the falls. This park has 18 campsites as well as 10 day-use areas. There are kitchen shelters and drinking water.

Escarpment Creek km 77 (Mile 48) (picnic site only)

The Hay River, on its way to Great Slave Lake, passes through a gorge 52 m (170 feet) high extending downstream for 8 km (5 miles). A stream and waterfall lead to the river and a trail connects this site with the campground at Louise Falls. There are eight day-use sites. Drinking water is not provided, but is available 3 km (2 miles) away at Louise Falls. A few hundred feet from where the highway crosses the creek is a picturesque set of falls associated with a gorge. The highest waterfall, farthest downstream, is 14 m (45 feet).

Enterprise km 84 (Mile 52)

Intersects highway 2: gas, food and lodging.

McNally Creek km 121 (Mile 75) (point of interest)

Fine place to stop, rest and view scenic waterfall plunging into deep gorge.

Hart Lake Fire Tower access road km 130 (Mile 81)

Picnic site 1 km (0.5-mi.) from the main highway near forest fire lookout tower. Barbecue grills, picnic tables, toilets, wood, well water from towerman. Panoramic view of 259 km² (100 sq. miles) of forest to Mackenzie River and Great Slave Lake. Path leads 457 m (500 yards) across two crevices to edge of 76 m (249-foot) escarpment, an ancient coral reef.



Territorial campground and picnic sites are located in scenic locations and are well supplied with firewood and services.

**Hart Lake access road
km 131 (Mile 82)**
(picnic site)

Unorganized picnic site at end of 2.4 km (1.5-mile) road. Scenic view of lake and Cameron Hills.

Lady Evelyn Falls km 170 (Mile 105)
(campsite and picnic area)

This campsite is about 6.5 km (4 miles) off Highway 1 on the road leading to the picturesque Slavey Indian village of Kakisa; 10 tent sites, five RV sites, five day-use areas, drinking water, kitchen shelters. A path leads to a view of the falls where the Kakisa River drops over a 15 m (49 ft.) limestone escarpment. A staircase leads into the gorge at the base of the falls. Swimming, fishing, hiking.

**Kakisa River Bridge km 171
(Mile 106)**
(picnic site only)

Located just off the highway, this new site has 10 picnic sites. Fish for grayling, wade or swim in this lovely river.

Whittaker Falls km 328 (Mile 204)
(campsite and picnic site)

This park is the only one on Highway 1 between the junction of Highway 3 and Fort Simpson. Located on Trout River next to Whittaker Falls and less than a half mile from Coral Falls. The park has five day-use sites and five campsites. Drinking water not available.

Fort Simpson km 478 (Mile 297)
(campsite and picnic site)

The park is located at the edge of the community of Fort Simpson in a deeply wooded area at the junction of the Liard and Mackenzie Rivers. It has 33 campsites and four day-use areas. Additional facilities include drinking water, boat launch, swimming, and kitchen shelters.

**Highway 2
Enterprise to Hay River**

**Paradise Gardens Campground
km 13 (Mile 8)**
(privately owned)

Six tent sites at \$5 per day and nine RV sites with electric plug-ins at \$6.50 per day, available in the Hay River Valley. Showers, water, fireplaces, kitchens, tables, sanitary dump and power. Nearby attractions include fossils, canoeing and fishing on Hay River. Ideal location for side trips to Kakisa, Pine Point, Fort Smith, Hay River. Fresh garden produce for sale in season. Open May 15-Sept. 30. Write: Ben Greenfield, Paradise Gardens Campground, Box 939, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Phone 874-6414.

Hay River km 43 (Mile 27)
(campground only)

The campground is situated near the lakeshore in the "Old Town" section of Hay River on Vale Island. Cross the bridge and follow the signs. This park has 22 campsites but no day-use facilities. It also offers kitchen shelters, drinking water, boat launch, dumping station nearby in New Town. fishing, swimming.

**Highway 3—Junction of
Highway 1 to Yellowknife**

Dory Point km 34 (Mile 21)
(picnic site only)

Located on the banks of the Mackenzie River near the ferry crossing, the picnic site offers a view of passing river boats. It has five day-use areas and a kitchen shelter but no drinking water.

Fort Providence km 37 (Mile 23)
(campsite only)

This campsite overlooks the Mackenzie River just outside the scenic village of Fort Providence where supplies and Dene handicrafts are available. It has 15 tent and 15 RV sites, kitchen shelters, drinking water, nearby boat launch; boat and motor rentals; guides; fishing.

Chan Lake km 121 (Mile 75)
(picnic site only)

This park is located roughly half-way between the junctions of Highways 1 and 3 and the community of Edzo. The area boasts some interesting bird life. The five day-use sites are serviced by a kitchen shelter, but there is no drinking water.

Mosquito Creek km 229 (Mile 143)

Here mountain avens, the floral emblem of the N.W.T., are well represented. Pickerel fishing in spring. This scenic creek tumbles along for nearly 8 km of continuous rapids on its way to Great Slave Lake. It is rich in wildlife.

North Arm km 233 (Mile 145)
(picnic site only)

Situated at the northerly end of the 100 km (62 mi.) long North Arm of Great Slave Lake. It has a white sandy beach and is equipped with a boat launch. The six day-use sites are serviced by a kitchen shelter. This park is in a liquor-prohibited area.

Edzo km 241 (Mile 150)
(campsite only)

This park is in the new settlement of Edzo. It is near Frank Channel which separates Great Slave Lake from Marian Lake. There are 10 campsites, a kitchen shelter and drinking water. The community is within a liquor prohibited area.

Boundary Creek km 309 (Mile 192)
(picnic site only)

The small stream that runs beside this park can be used for canoeing and fishing. There is also some birdlife in the area. There are five day-use sites here and a kitchen shelter.

Long Lake Beach km 339 (Mile 211)
(picnic area)

Located on the highway across from the Yellowknife airport. It has 10 picnic sites, a boat launch and toilets. There is also a municipal sand beach with concession and a lifeguard in mid-summer.

Yellowknife km 341 (Mile 212)
(camping only)

The campsite entrance is located opposite the Bristol Monument at the junction of Yellowknife's two access roads. Campers have access to Long Lake Beach. The 44 campsites are serviced with a kitchen shelter, drinking water and a dumping station.

**Highway 4—Yellowknife to
Tibbet Lake (Ingraham Trail)**

Vee Lake km 5 (Mile 3)
(picnic site)

Turn off highway at tank farm. Sections of this road further in may be impassable to most vehicles in wet weather, but Vee Lake boat launch and unorganized picnic site, 5 km (3 miles) off highway, is accessible on maintained road. Good area for rockhounds. From east arm of the lake a portage leads to Walsh Lake where there is good trout fishing.

Yellowknife River km 8 (Mile 5)
(picnic site only)

This picnic area near the mouth of the Yellowknife River has eight day-use sites and a boat launch. Fishing and canoe rentals nearby, but no drinking water. The river, 264 km (165 miles) long, has its headwaters in Porphyry Lake and provides a canoe route from Great Slave Lake to the upper waters of the Coppermine River. It is formed by a succession of lakes and streams, necessitating frequent portages. Dependent on the depth of water over the mudbanks at the head of Yellowknife Bay, the river is navigable for 9.6 km (6 miles) to the rapids at the south end of Prosperous Lake.

Ptarmigan Mine km 16 (Mile 10)
(viewpoint: turn right at road near hydro tower)

An abandoned gold mine where bird life is abundant and rockhounds can enjoy looking for samples. Nearly 340,000 g (12,000 ounces) of gold were recovered from this mine during its nine months of operation in 1941-42.

Prosperous Lake km 19 (Mile 12)

(picnic site only)

This picnic area on Prosperous Lake where it meets the highway is a popular fishing and boating site. Boat launch and two day-use sites, no drinking water. Small sand beaches. Excellent starting point for an extensive motor-canoe trip through Prelude Lake into the Yellowknife and Cameron rivers. Northern pike, whitefish and lake trout are reasonably plentiful.

Madeline Lake km 25 (Mile 15)

(picnic site only)

Another popular picnic area, Madeline Lake is a fishing spot with a boat launch and no drinking water. Four day-use sites available. The 3.2 km (2 mi.) Big Hill Lake trail starts on the north side of the road across from a small parking area. It leads to good trout fishing and picnicking. The Trail could be a strenuous walk for youngsters.

Pontoon Lake km 27 (Mile 17)

(picnic site only)

This picnic area has a boat launch for fishermen, and 10 day-use sites. No drinking water available.

Prelude Lake km 29 (Mile 18)

(campsite and picnic area)

This area has 28 campsites and 20 picnic sites. A popular area with both Yellowknife residents and visitors, it features a boat launch, swimming, kitchen shelter, drinking water. Boat rentals and commercial accommodation available, cafe and store.

Powder Point Territorial Park km 47 (Mile 29)

Boat launch for access to Prelude Lake and start of canoe route to Hidden Lake.

Cameron River Falls Trail km 49 (Mile 30)

A nice hike for families but young tots will have to be carried. A 1.2 km (three-quarter-mile) hike with scenic outlooks along the way and 14 m (45-ft.) waterfall at end of trail. Whitefish at bottom of falls.

Cameron River Bridge km 58 (Mile 36)

Bailey bridge over Cameron River and trail to a second waterfall; .4 km (quarter-mile) walk. A fine spot for swimming and canoeing. Suitable for family.

Reid Lake Trail km 60 (Mile 37)

Take narrow gravel road to the right of the highway, just west of the entrance to Reid Lake Campground to reach trail. Easy 555 m (.3-mi.) walk for family. Rapids and small falls at end of trail.

Reid Lake km 61 (Mile 38)

(campsite and picnic area)

This camping area has 27 campsites and 10 picnic sites on a scenic lake near river rapids. This could be a starting point for hiking or a weekend canoe trip back to Yellowknife. Facilities include kitchen shelter, boat launch and dock, drinking water, fishing.

Tibbet Lake km 72 (Mile 45)

End of Ingraham Trail. Fine fishing spot. Start of canoe route to Yellowknife via Cameron River watershed.



Grayling and pike are caught at the foot of Lady Evelyn Falls near Kakisa.

Highway 5 – Junction of Highway 2 to Fort Smith**Polar Lake km 60 (Mile 38)**
(unorganized camp site)

This privately stocked lake is operated by the Pine Point community groups. Rainbow trout fingerlings are introduced every year. There's fine swimming but no motorboats are allowed on the lake. Access road is located 15 km west of the junctions of highways 5 and 6.

Klewi Lake km 180 (Mile 112)

(picnic site)

About 87 km (54 mi.) north of Fort Smith in Wood Buffalo National Park; five picnic sites, canoe launching, pathways. At the end of 1 km sidewalk heading north from main road.

Little Buffalo Falls km 214 (Mile 133)
(campsite and picnic area)

This campground and picnic site (five of each) is by a scenic waterfall on the Little Buffalo River. This is the start of a canoe route that crosses Highway 6. There is a kitchen shelter, but no drinking water.

Thebacha (Salt River) km 257 (Mile 157)

(campsite)

This privately-owned campsite owned by the Metis Association, Local 50 of Fort Smith, is 16 km (10 miles) north off the highway on a road which meets the Salt River where goldeye and inconnu await the angler. It has eight sites with three double-unit toilets and adjacent parking space.

Fort Smith km 267 (Mile 166)
(campground and picnic area)

This campground is near the Slave River and Wood Buffalo National Park. Hiking and fishing nearby. On the airport road. There are 18 campsites and 12 picnic areas. Drinking water is available. Facilities include a kitchen shelter and dumping station.

Fort Fitzgerald, Alta. km 288 (Mile 180)

Once a thriving sawmill and shipping point on the Slave River, "Fitz" now is all but a ghost town with only seven houses occupied. No facilities. A bush road leads 16 km (10 miles) into the spectacular back-country.

Pine Lake
(campground)

See National Parks section, page 34: Wood Buffalo National Park.

Highway 6 – Junction of Highway 5 to Fort Resolution**Galena km 22 (Mile 14)**
(campground and picnic area)

Located in Pine Point, near the downtown area. Features 12 campsites, five picnic areas, drinking water, dumping station.

Dawson Landing km 25 (Mile 16)
(unorganized picnic site)

A 40 km (25 mi.) bush road just east of Pine Point leads to Great Slave Lake. For motorists with suitable vehicles, or hikers, the road affords an opportunity to get

close to the country. A long limestone beach provides a good view of Great Slave Lake and offshore islands. Angling for pike and pickerel.

Highway 8
Dempster Highway

N.W.T. Border to Inuvik

North America's newest wilderness road is now open to tourists. Motorists are able to turn north on the Dempster route 40 km east of Dawson City, Yukon and travel to Inuvik on the Mackenzie Delta. If you would like to try camping inside the Arctic Circle, the N.W.T. government has opened two new campsites; one at Fort McPherson and the other at Inuvik. Picnic sites are situated along the road at scenic locations. Distances are marked for N.W.T. sites from the N.W.T./Yukon border in kilometres and the cumulative total from the start of the Dempster is marked in brackets.

Junction of Yukon Hwy. 3 and the Dempster km 0 (Mile 0)

Eagle Plains Hotel km 371 (Mile 230)

All services available. Food, fuel, lodging, repairs, laundromat, camping (wood and water available), plug-ins, propane and licenced dining lounge.

Arctic Circle km 407 (Mile 253)

Marked by a huge grader tire suspended on posts.

N.W.T./Yukon border km 0 (km 466) (Mile 291)

The continental divide in the Richardson Mountains. West of here water flows to the Pacific Ocean. East of here water flows to the Arctic Ocean.

Peel River ferry km 75 (km 542) (Mile 339)

Operates seven days a week during open water season. (See Driving North)

Nutuiliue Park km 77 (km 543) (Mile 339)

The name means "place of fast flowing water" in the local Dene dialect. There are 20 campsites, a visitor information centre, wood and water are available. It's located on a hill with a spectacular view of the Peel River and Richardson Mountains. There are good hiking trails, bird-watching and photographic opportunities in the area surrounding the park.

Fort McPherson Access Road km 85 (km 551) (Mile 345)

A short sideroad leads into the settlement. Groceries, fuel and accommodation are available.

Arctic Red River ferry km 143 (km 609) (Mile 380)

The free ferry takes travellers either across the Arctic Red River to the Dene settlement of the same name or across the Mackenzie River for the continuation of the Dempster Highway.

Rengling River km 175.8 (km 642) (Mile 401)

A scenic picnic site and fishing spot.

Caribou Creek km 218 (km 684) (Mile 428)

A picnic spot with six tables, fire places, firewood and toilets.

Cabin Creek km 241 (km 707) (Mile 442)

A fishing spot with two tables and a view of Campbell Lake.

Campbell Creek km 244.2 (km 710) (Mile 444)

This picnic spot is located in an area with considerable birdlife and fishing opportunities. There are six picnic sites, fireplace firewood and boat launch.

Inuvik Airport km 256.9 (km 722.9) (Mile 452)

Chuk Park km 266.4 (km 732.4) (Mile 458)

There are 20 campsites, wood and fresh water. A nearby fishing lake is accessible to canoes. The campsite is located on a ridge overlooking the Mackenzie River and surrounding countryside. The name means "a place of many berries". A dump station is in the west end of Inuvik.

Happy Valley km 270 (km 736) (Mile 460)

The campground is located just a few minutes walking distance from the downtown core. It overlooks the Twin Lakes and the East Channel of the Mackenzie River. There are 20 RV sites and ten tent pads with picnic tables, fireplaces, firewood, drinking water and toilets.

Park Protection

Enjoy your drive on the territorial highways and visit the parks along the way. Please follow these rules and preserve our parks for the full enjoyment of all visitors.

- Be careful with fire. Use only the places provided and be sure your fire is out before leaving. It is illegal and unnecessary to cut down trees — firewood is provided.
- Please park your vehicle on the prepared road surfaces. Keep tents and equipment on the campsite pad.
- Pets must be kept on a leash in the parks.
- Sound carries. Please don't spoil other people's holiday with a blaring radio or tape player.
- We need your help to keep the parks clean. All litter should be placed in the garbage barrels provided.
- **Remember:** Persons visiting the viewpoints and other facilities along the highways do so at their own risk.
- It is illegal to hunt or discharge firearms in a territorial park.

Off the Highway System – Camping and Picnic Areas

Norman Wells — McKinnon Park (campground and picnic site) 3 km (2 mi.) from town, overlooking Mackenzie River. Ten picnic sites, tables, fireplaces, wood, five camping sites, drinking water, toilets.

Fort Norman — Tulita Territorial Park: 1.6 km (1 mile) from town on bank of Mackenzie River, 10 picnic sites, fireplaces, wood, tables, drinking water, toilets.

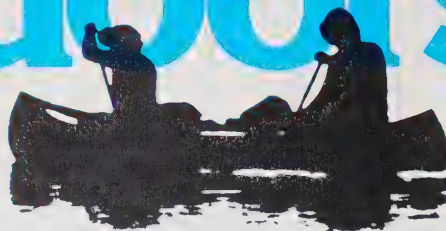
Frobisher Bay — Sylvia Grinnel (campground and picnic site). Accessible by road from Frobisher Bay 3 km (2 mi.). Ten

campsites and 10 picnic sites overlooking the Sylvia Grinnel River rapids. Fishing in season. Toilets, fireplaces, tables, kitchen shelter. No drinking water.

Pangnirtung — Pitsutinu Tugavik (campground and picnic site) At the edge of the community of Pangnirtung, it has eight campsites and eight picnic areas. From Pangnirtung hikers gain access by boat to Auyuittuq National Park. Hiking. Toilets, kitchen shelter. No drinking water.

Overlord (campground) — See National Parks section, Auyuittuq National Park.

THE GREAT Outdoors



Only the shrill cry of a loon disturbs the solitude as your paddle breaks the mirror-like surface. It's early morning; and, as you glide into a good-looking spot, the fish give themselves away, rippling the surface in search of feed. It's been days since the last trace of civilization faded from view. You wonder how long it will be before another party traces your path.

This is the northern summer, a unique outdoors experience. Whether you choose a wilderness canoe expedition or find a spot of your own near the highway, the Northwest Territories offer scenery, great fishing and a tranquility experienced by few people.

Preparing for camping in the territories is not difficult. There are only a few added problems not faced in the south and some southern problems you don't have to face here. If your trip is in our prime

season (June-July), leave your flashlights at home. The sun hardly sets inside the Arctic Circle and even in the southern parts of the N.W.T. there are about 20 hours of sunlight interrupted by a twilight period. Having a lake or river of your own is easy, but remember that nobody is there to help you. Plan thoroughly, carry a first-aid kit, and register any wilderness trip with the RCMP (see Things to Know section). Here are some more tips for northern outdoors-people.

Transportation

You can fly to the territories and rent a boat or canoe at a number of communities (see Transportation section). Consider arranging a trip with an outfitter (see Outfitters section) who will provide you with all the supplies and equipment for your journey and a guide. If you are driving north, be sure to wrap your gear; there is lots of dust when passing other

vehicles. If towing a trailer, it's wise to fix a plywood shield over the front window or around the bow of your boat to protect against flying gravel. Make arrangements in advance if you wish to charter a float plane to fly your party into a remote lake (see Transportation section). Remember that smaller planes can only carry one canoe on their floats (Twin Otters can carry up to three canoes inside) and the maximum length of canoe carried on the floats is 5.2 m (17 feet). It is also possible to have canoes shipped via regular freight service to and from a number of communities.

Route Planning

Plan your trip early with the aid of large-scale maps. In the Arctic regions compasses are unreliable so maps are your only reference. In all areas maps are very useful to warn you of shoals, shallow water and rapids. For maps and publications on geography, animal and plant life, canoeing, etc. (see Read About Us section). The "Rivers North" booklet, available free from TravelArctic, is a handy guide for canoeists and boaters planning an N.W.T. trip.

Weather

Dealing with the northern climate in the summer is no problem. By June the lakes are free of ice in the southern parts of the N.W.T. and camping is possible without special gear until early September. The best weather is usually from mid-June to the end of July. In the Arctic the season is shorter and temperatures can drop quite low in the last part of August.

You'll find that a dip in many of the smaller (particularly shallower) lakes in the southern Mackenzie is quite comfortable. So take your swimming trunks along when you travel North. Other clothing to carry includes a light raincoat, a sweater, cap, and your usual travelling wardrobe. In the Arctic, temperatures are often 5°-10°C cooler; add a down-filled



Good Arctic char fishing is found along Baffin Island fiords. (photo by Crombie McNeil)

windbreaker and it's best to use down sleeping bags here.

Equipment

You will need pretty much the same as for a southern trip with a few exceptions. In the Arctic there is no wood supply so carry a cooking stove and fuel. In the Mackenzie region there is plenty of dead-fall for firewood and all government campsites are supplied with cut wood. In many places the ground is uneven so take along an air or foam mattress to put under your sleeping bag.

Bugs

Mosquitos and blackflies are at their worst from early June to well into July. In open areas or on the water the bugs are not a serious problem, but in marshy areas or after the sun goes down they can be a serious nuisance. Headnets are preferred by some people and some insect repellents also work well. The more expensive brands are generally best; check when you arrive for the most effective repellents. On the barrenland and other heavily-infested areas considerable success has been reported by people using special mesh jackets impregnated with repellent.

Campsites

Along the highways there are many organized campsites and these should be used by motorists (see Highway Holidays



Sandy beaches make good camping spots for canoeists. (photo by Mike van Duffelen)

section). Away from the road system you can pick your own spot. Look for a flat place on the sheltered side of an island where your boat can be pulled up. Generally the insects will be less numerous if you site your camp on high ground where there are prevailing breezes. Avoid low, swampy areas. Many campers make sure that their camp is set and dinner completed before the sun finally goes down and the mosquitos come out.

Supplies

There are stores in almost every community but there is a very limited selection away from the larger centres, so you should plan ahead. Remember that filling stations are up to 320 km (200 mi.) apart on the highways so take advantage of every station.

Safety

Water safety is a prime concern in the North. The water is very cold in the deeper lakes and in the Arctic. Since cold water can cause death from exposure in less than 15 minutes, it is advisable to use extreme caution in canoes and stay close to shore. Canoeists are often wise to travel in groups of two or more canoes. When travelling unfamiliar rivers, be sure to listen for rapids and stay close to shore in case there is a waterfall around the next sharp bend. If you do see rapids, scout along it from shore before going through. On lengthy trips you can often make arrangements to have a bush pilot

check your progress occasionally. And naturally, one should always wear a life-jacket on the water.

Remember the North's long hours of sunlight and carry suntan lotion and a hat to shade your eyes. At camp be sure to cache your food and clean up litter to discourage bears from becoming a dangerous nuisance around camp. If you do see a bear, leave the area immediately.

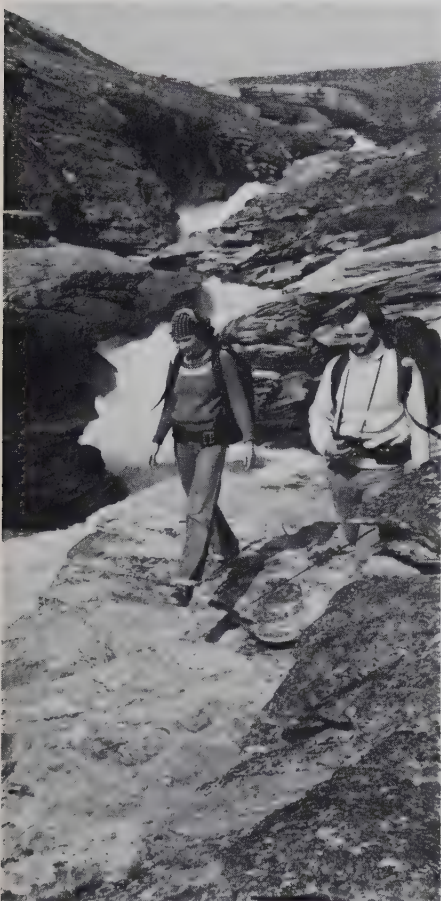
Regulations

Like all anglers, campers must get a licence to fish (see Angling Section). Please remember that it is an offence to disturb an archeological site and these should be reported to the government. No permit is needed to canoe on N.W.T. rivers and lakes.

Keep it Beautiful

Please burn and bury your garbage or put it in the receptacles. Firewood is provided at all government campsites so please don't cut any trees. At other spots there is plenty of deadfall which burns better than green wood, too.

Forest fires have burned millions of acres of the territories. Please help us cut the toll. Site your fire on rock or sand (never on moss where the fire can spread underground). Before you leave the site, even temporarily, douse the coals with lots of water, stir them and pour on more water.



A fine hiking spot near Pangnirtung on Baffin Island. (photo by Crombie McNeil)

NATIONAL Parks



There are three national parks in the N.W.T. — Wood Buffalo, Nahanni and Auyuittuq (pronounced ah-you-ee-tuk).

Wood Buffalo, reached easily by all-weather highway from Alberta, offers a variety of treats for vacationing families with young children, while Nahanni appeals to lovers of wild rivers and Auyuittuq to self-contained hikers and experienced mountain climbers. Visitors should remember that by law these parks have been "dedicated to the people . . . for their benefit, education and enjoyment" and must remain "unimpaired for future generations."

Wood Buffalo National Park

This is the world's second largest park. Covering more area than Hawaii, Massachusetts, Delaware and Rhode Island combined, its 44,980 km² (17,300 mi²) are home for a wide variety of wild animals, plant life and strange geological formations.

The park was established in 1922 as a haven for Canada's last herd of 1,500 wood bison, an animal slightly larger and darker than the plains bison that once roamed the Canadian and U.S. prairies in the millions. Shortly after the park was established, more than 6,000 plains bison were brought in from central Alberta. The

two species interbred and now number about 6,000 hybrid animals. Drive carefully, when in the park as these and other animals often can be seen from the road.

The park also has a campground, more than 50 km (30 miles) of year-round trails for hikers and cross-country skiing enthusiasts, canoe routes and a widely-acclaimed interpretive program.

Although the park is open year-round, this interpretive program runs from the beginning of June to the first week in September. Slide/talks and movies are given each week in the Northern Life Museum in Fort Smith, and at Pine Lake theatre. Special events include buffalo viewing on foot, exploring caves, canoe

trips, and hikes. Check in the park to see what is being offered during your stay.

Geographically, the park lies on the eastern interior plains. Several interesting types of terrain are found: plateaus that rise abruptly to 900 m (3,000 feet) above sea level from the almost-flat plains that cover much of the park and beyond, massive "sinkholes," the collapsed remains of caves carved from soft rock by subsurface runoff, and salt plains.

The park, two-thirds of which is in Alberta and the rest in the N.W.T., is the only breeding ground of the majestic whooping crane. These nearly-extinct birds, whose known population in the wild is only 98, live here from April until October before migrating to their winter range along the Gulf of Mexico. The nesting ground is closed to the public.

The accumulation of waterfowl on the Peace-Athabasca Delta in the spring is one of the greatest spectacles of its kind found anywhere. The northernmost colony of white pelicans feeds in the park but nests just outside on an island in the Slave River. In all, more than 200 species have been spotted in the park.

Park Facilities

Although there are no commercial facilities in the park, groceries can be bought at Fort Smith, N.W.T. A new 36-site campground opened in the summer of 1979 at Pine Lake, 61 km (38 miles) south of Fort Smith. The water is warm enough for swimming from mid-July until mid-August. Facilities include potable water, an interpretive theatre, trailer pump-out and wash station, change houses, a picnic shelter, firewood and chemical toilets. Other facilities at the lake include a group camp, boat launch and dock, warden's cabin and a campground attendant. Reservations are required at the group camp which will be open to organized groups of five to 50 persons. Elsewhere in the park, there are many unorganized camping and picnicking spots.

The park gravel road system is usually open to public travel from May 1 to Nov. 1. The section of road south of Hay Camp to Carlson's Landing is closed from April to November. Large sections of the main road are closed continuously during the period November to April when a Fort Smith-Fort Chipewyan winter road is established.

Those wishing to travel the winter road should check with the park office to determine the route and its condition.

Park headquarters are in nearby Fort Smith, 800 km (500 miles) by air from Edmonton. Fort Smith is served by regular air service and a 1,365 km (850-mile) all-weather highway from Ed-

monton. A warden area headquarters is located in Fort Chipewyan, 160 km (100 miles) south on the shore of Lake Athabasca.

Information regarding the park, trail brochures, maps, bird and mammal check lists may be obtained when in Fort Smith, from the naturalist office off Portage Avenue or at the park administration office at the corner of McDougal Road and Portage. An orientation facility in the naturalist's office provides displays and video programs to introduce people to the park plus the local environment of Fort Smith. Written requests should be sent to the **Superintendent, Wood Buffalo National Park, Box 750, Fort Smith, N.W.T. X0E 0P0.**

Nahanni National Park

Orchids in northern Canada? Come see them in one of the world's most magnificent, multifaceted wilderness regions. Nahanni covers 4,765 km² (1,840 mi²) in the southwest corner of the territories.

Established in 1971, this national park has since been included on the UNESCO world heritage list for its international significance as a unique geological area. It is recognized by the National Geographic Society as one of the eight deepest canyons in the world, almost as deep as the Grand Canyon in Colorado.

Whitewater canoeists will get a thrill out of the South Nahanni River and its miles of shoreline splendor and expanses of turbulent rapids. But beware the swift river, with its dynamic sand and gravel bars. Between May and mid-June break-up may cause hazardous high water and increased incidence of driftwood.

Below Moose Ponds there is almost continuous whitewater but low flow volume makes it passable. Portages have been constructed around Virginia Falls and Figure of Eight rapids.

If you're a nature-lover and don't mind roughing it, Nahanni is the place for you. But mind where you camp. Although Parks Canada has set up a number of campsites in convenient locations, beware of pitching your tent on low-lying gravel bars. The South Nahanni and Flat rivers, and their tributaries, have been known to rise more than 1.5 m (5 feet) overnight from heavy rain.

The major cataract of the South Nahanni is the spectacular Virginia Falls where you can find orchids. Look at them; photograph them; but please don't pick the orchids. Here the river plunges more than 90 metres (300 feet) — twice the height of Niagara Falls — to make it the most splendid undeveloped waterfall in Canada.

Legends abound here: Deadmen Valley, where headless human skeletons have

been found; Rabbitkettle Hotsprings where the water temperature remains at 21°C (69°F) throughout the year. Greed, gold and death under dubious circumstances have created fantasy and myth. Rumor about a lost gold mine haunted the area for some 60 years. Some 25 deaths or mysterious disappearances have been reported. The colorful names are reflected in these legends and myths.

Many Adventures

The park, named after a Nahanni Indian word meaning "people over there far away," offers adventure to expert outdoors people travelling on their own. Or the less experienced can travel the river by boat, raft or canoe under the guidance of an outfitter. (See Outfitters section for more information.)

From Rabbitkettle Lake to Virginia Falls, the South Nahanni River meanders through a broad valley. There are no rapids in this scenic 118 km (73 mile) section. Portage around the falls and view this impressive cataract plummeting 90 m (300 feet).

Downstream the Nahanni plunges through the continuous rapids of Five Mile Canyon to Figure Eight Rapids, the best known rapids of the park. The Gate, a narrow gap flanked by a towering vertical wall in the quieter waters of Third Canyon, offers an opportunity for spectacular photography.



The Slave River is a scenic canoeing and boating river flowing through Wood Buffalo National Park. (photo by Frank Grant)

As an alternative to the chilly waters of the Nahanni, take a dip in Kraus Hot-springs, located downstream from First Canyon. The sulphur springs reach almost 37°C (98°F). While at the hot-springs explore the remains of an old homestead. From Rabbitkettle Lake to the east park boundary to Nahanni Butte is 32 km (20 miles).

In addition to scenic waterfalls, hot-springs and wilderness rivers, good wildlife

photographs can be taken. Scout the alpine tundra and along the rivers. Species include Dall sheep, mountain goat, moose, caribou, black bear, 120 different kinds of birds and 40 species of plants.

Scheduled visits to the Rabbitkettle Hot Springs can be arranged through the Park Warden stationed at Rabbitkettle Lake. Visitors chartering into the lake are requested to register with the warden.

Fishing is only fair in the main rivers but good catches of dolly varden trout and Arctic grayling have been reported in tributaries. Fishermen require a national parks angling licence which may be bought at Nahanni Butte or Fort Simpson where park headquarters are located.

Safe hiking in alpine tundra areas on Tlogotsho Plateau and the north rim of First Canyon also is possible for those with the time and energy to endure the two-to-ten-hour struggle required to hike from the valley floor to timberline. Parks staff can suggest other backcountry trails.

The Flat River provides an alternative 125 km canoe trip that enters the S. Nahanni River 25 km below Virginia Falls. Rapids of varying difficulty challenge the white-water enthusiast.

You can reach the park by driving on all-weather highways to Fort Simpson, N.W.T., or Watson Lake, Yukon, and then flying in by charter aircraft. Or take a river boat with an outfitter. Fort Simpson is serviced by Pacific Western Airlines and Simpson Air; Watson Lake by CP Air.

Park information may be obtained by writing the **Superintendent, Nahanni National Park, Postal Bag 300, Fort Simpson, N.W.T. X0E 0N0.**

Auyuittuq National Park

If you want an exciting Arctic experience, you will find it in the grandeur and isolation of the world's first national park inside the Arctic Circle.

Auyuittuq, 2,400 km (1,500 miles) northeast of Montreal on the Cumberland Peninsula of Baffin Island, offers tours, skiing, nature study, photography, hiking and mountain climbing.

Created in 1972 to preserve a unique Arctic wilderness of perpetual ice, jagged mountain peaks, deep valleys and spectacular fiords, the 21,470 km² (8,290 mi²) park is ablaze with color in June and July. White mountain avens, yellow Arctic poppies and purple saxifrage turn rock deserts into breathtaking rock gardens.

Here the visitor may also see ringed, harp and bearded seals off the east coast and perhaps even beluga or white whales, walrus and narwhals. This is a small species of whale with a long ivory spiralled tusk protruding from the upper jaw of the male. While sea life is plentiful, the sparse vegetation supports few animal species. But you may spot weasels, foxes, lemmings or even polar bears.

Bird life is abundant with more than 40 species having been seen, including snowy owls, Canada geese, eider ducks,



The canyons of the Nahanni River have been declared a unique geological area by the United Nations.



Backpackers and hikers find new vistas in Auyuittuq Park's Pangnirtung Pass trail.

ptarmigan, ravens and the endangered peregrine falcon and gyrfalcon.

Because it straddles the Arctic Circle at the 66th parallel, the park has 24 hours of daylight from May through July and total darkness in mid-winter. April, May and early June is the best time for winter activities.

At the heart of Auyuittuq (pronounced ah-you-ee-tuk, meaning "the place that never melts" in an Inuit dialect) is the Penny Ice Cap, whose glaciers are still actively shaping the land. The largest glacier, Coronation, is 32 km (20 miles) long and 3 km (2 miles) wide. Deep U-shaped valleys have been carved out during hundreds of thousands of years of glaciation. Pangnirtung Pass, 97 km (60 miles) long, is an excellent example and forms an ice-free trough through the mountains joining Cumberland Sound with Davis Strait. Along the coast are spectacular fiords with vertical cliffs towering 900 m (3,000 feet) high.

Hiking and Camping

The Park is generally accessible by snow machine during the winter and up until mid to late June. Breakup generally occurs between late June and early July at which time there is no access to the Park except by foot along the fiord. From early July until early October the Park can be reached by freighter canoes only. Water transportation depends on the tides and the weather. Pangnirtung experiences 10 metre tides and canoe access to the village is available for about 2½ hours on either side of high tide. Severe local

winds around Pangnirtung frequently prevent all canoe travel into and out of the settlement. Visitors to the park must be prepared to wait three to four days if necessary until winds in the area abate.

Most visitors to the park come for the first-hand experience of nature that hiking brings. The difficult terrain and changeable weather demand considerable outdoor experience, equipment designed for northern conditions and careful planning. The best time for hiking is late June to early September, when the pass is ice-free. (See Outfitters section and Tours section for more information on escorted and unescorted trips in the park.)

Pangnirtung Pass has all the ingredients of a great hiking challenge: gravel flats, boulder-strewn moraines, glacial tongues and cold streams to be forded. On this terrain, a hiker is doing well to cover 3 km (2 miles) an hour.

Remember that hiking conditions are difficult here. Don't try to achieve beyond your normal capabilities. Chilling winds, rain, and difficult terrain can tire one, resulting in falls, twisted ankles, even hypothermia. Walks on the glaciers should only be attempted with experienced and properly equipped hikers or climbers.

Many glacial fed, shallow streams cross the trail. Ford those streams carefully. Undo the backpack's hip belt and carry the pack by one shoulder strap. This will permit easy ejection if one slips or falls into the water.

Overlord Campground is located on the Weasel River delta and has 12 tent sites, drinking water, fireplaces, firewood and toilets. The campsite is open all year. Seven emergency shelters are placed at strategic locations in Pangnirtung Pass. Each holds a first-aid kit and five are equipped with two-way radios to communicate with park office in Pangnirtung and Broughton Island.

The hiker's equipment should include lightweight camping gear, windproof and waterproof clothing, stout hiking boots (and sneakers for wading streams), a campstove, matches, maps, compass and first-aid kit. Some freeze-dried food may be bought at Pangnirtung and Broughton Island.

Peaks such as Mount Asgard, Mount Odin and Thor, rising to 2,000 m (6,600 feet) from the valley floors have lured climbers from France, Italy, Japan, Switzerland and the United Kingdom, as well as North America. The ideal climbing months are June and July when there is no darkness. Park visitors must register with the park administration office at Pangnirtung or at the warden's office in Broughton Island.

A commercial airline operates jet service from Montreal to Frobisher Bay, 290 km (180 miles) from the park. There is also regular air service from Frobisher Bay to Pangnirtung, near the southern boundary, and to Broughton Island at the eastern terminus of the park.

Park information may be obtained by writing the **Superintendent, Auyuittuq National Park, Pangnirtung, N.W.T. X0A 0R0.**

Angling & Hunting

Have you ever wanted a lake or stream to yourself? If you're keen on sports fishing, the territories can offer you just that, with countless lakes and streams. You can do it on your own or there are professionals to outfit, transport, guide and put you up. There is appropriate help in planning a trip throughout this guide.

The territories seem custom-designed to make fishing a rewarding experience with 20 hours of summer sunshine daily in the southern sections and 24 hours once you cross the Arctic Circle. The summer air is pleasantly warm but the waters stay very cold, so even the fighting fish are found near the surface.

The best season to plan your fishing trip is 2 - 3 weeks after the ice goes off the lakes and streams in the southern parts of the N.W.T. in mid-May. Freeze-up doesn't usually occur until late October. However, ice-fishing is growing in popularity during the winter months. In the Arctic regions, July through September are the best months for ice-free fishing.

There's plenty of good fishing along our highway system. Car-top boats and canoes are often used on small lakes and streams. Boat launches have been built at several locations. (see Highway Holidays section). If you choose to venture on to a large lake such as Great Slave or Great Bear, **be cautious**. Make sure you have navigational aids, local charts (see pages Read About Us section) and stay close to shore in small craft, watching the weather carefully.

Fly-in Fishing

Perhaps you'd like to try your luck on a remote lake. This will enable you to catch species and sizes not common near the roads. Fly-in fishing in the N.W.T. is about the best you'll find any-

where and it's easy to charter a float plane. Charter airplanes with floats are available in many communities and often superb trophy-type fishing is found less than an hour's flying time from base. (See Charter Carriers, Transportation section) Rates start at \$.60/km (\$1.00/mile). Certain minimum charges exist and if you're being dropped off and picked up later, you'll pay for the distance the plane has to fly empty. A small canoe can be carried on the pontoons of a float plane. Canoes or small boats can be rented from the businesses listed in the Transportation section.

Clothing: Quality rain gear is needed to protect against rain and spray in open boats. Rubber boots or hip waders are recommended for wading in most fishing spots. Bring along a warm sweater, heavy jacket, good boots for walking on rocky or slippery surfaces, suntan lotion and insect repellent. Warm socks, a hat, sunglasses and gloves will come in handy. If you're going inside the Arctic Circle, you might be glad you brought along heavy underwear. And don't forget your camera.

Trophy Waters

The Northwest Territories is well known for the trophy quality of many of its sport fisheries. In fact, world-record lake trout, Arctic grayling and Arctic char have been taken from the Northwest Territories. Northern pike also ranks high in trophy designations.

Arctic fish, compared to their southern counterparts, grow slowly. The two metres thick ice which forms on arctic lakes during the winter cuts down life-generating sunlight. A ten-year-old lake trout would only weigh about one kilogram in the N.W.T. compared to five kilograms in southern waters.

Even at low levels of exploitation it may take 10 to 20 years to replace fish in the

trophy category once they are removed from the fishery.

At the present time the waters of Tree River (arctic char), Great Bear and Great Slave lakes (lake trout) and the upper Mackenzie River from 116° to 118°W longitude (Arctic grayling and northern pike) are being managed as trophy fisheries.

Northern Species

Lake trout, northern pike and grayling are plentiful in N.W.T. mainland waters; Arctic char are found in waters above the treeline.

N.W.T. lake trout are much fiercer fighters than their southern counterparts. In larger lakes, trout may be caught with a variety of lures near the surface during the open water period. In smaller lakes, trout seek the deeper, cooler waters during the summer. The biggest laker caught tipped the scales at 30 kg. (65 pounds).

Northern pike are abundant in most shallow, weedy waters along the highway system. They'll take most anything but the red and white spoons are very effective. Pike have been caught exceeding 18 kg (40 pounds).

Arctic grayling run in schools preferring clear streams and lakeshore areas. They're great sport for the fly fishermen but many are taken on light spinning and casting rigs. Grayling average about 1.5 kg (3 pounds).

Arctic char, members of the salmon family, are very streamlined with a dark green back shading to a silver belly. They turn bright red during the spawning season. These fierce fighters are also a gourmet's delight. Char average 3 kg (7 pounds).

Anglers will also find walleye along the Mackenzie Valley waters. Whitefish are plentiful in lakes across mainland N.W.T. Salmon, although rare, have been caught in Great Slave Lake.

Use a Barbless Hook

Most mortalities among released fish occur as a result of excessive bleeding when hooks have been embedded in the gullet or gills. Many of the fish hooked in these areas are released only to swim away and die. We recommend that the barbs on your hooks be filed off or pinched down with pliers. Barbless hooks facilitate easy removal and minimize damage to the fish.

Handling and Release

Play it like a true sportsman and release under-sized fish. Most fish, when handled properly and released, do survive and may provide exciting fishing for someone else. Here are some suggestions: 1) use a

barbless hook; 2) use small-mesh landing nets because larger sizes often tangle in the gill areas of the fish and may cause severe damage; 3) keep the fish in water as much as possible because damage can occur when fish thrash about in the boat or on shore; 4) remove the hook quickly but carefully using hook removers or needle-nose pliers to work the hook free rather than tearing it out; 5) if a fish must be handled, avoid grasping it by the gills or eyes but grip it firmly across the top of the head or neck or under the belly; 6) use a wet mitt or at least a wet hand when holding the fish otherwise the removal of the fish's protective mucous coating could make it susceptible to disease; 7) if a fish is sluggish and unable to right itself once returned to the water, move it gently back and forth to force water over the gills.

You should keep any fish that is damaged or bleeding heavily because it will likely die soon after release.

Award for Tagged Fish

Fish in many areas of the Northwest Territories are tagged for fishery management studies. With the information collected through fish tags, fishery managers are able to determine the distribution movements, the relative abundance and growth rates of fish, as well as protecting fish from overexploitation and adverse effects of industrial development.

A crest and certificate from the Department of Fisheries and Oceans is awarded to anglers catching a tagged fish in the Northwest Territories. If you catch a tagged fish, mail the tag to the address given below and include a brief note stating: 1) where caught; 2) when caught; 3) length; 4) weight; 5) sex (if you can determine it); and 6) lure used.

Send the information and tags to: **Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Box 2310, Yellowknife, Northwest Territories, X0E 1H0.**

Sport Fishing Licences

- Resident sport fishing licence (Canadians) \$3.00
- Non-Resident sports fishing licence (non-Canadians) \$10.00

- No licence required for:
- (a) Resident under the age of 16 and over the age of 65;
 - (b) Non-resident under the age of 16 who is accompanied by a person who holds a sport fishing licence.

For the purposes of angling, a "resident" means a person who has resided in Canada for a period of not less than six months immediately preceding the day on which he applies for an angling licence.

Angling licences are available in most communities from local hardware and sporting goods stores, from virtually all fishing lodges, and the 60th Parallel Visitor Information Centre at the Northwest Territories-Alberta border on Highway 1.

An angler must carry his or her licence and produce it at the request of a federal fisheries officer, a Wildlife officer from the Government of the N.W.T., or the RCMP.

(If you lose your licence, another must be purchased.)

"Angling" means fishing by the use of a rod, line and hook, or a hook and line.

"Fishing" means fishing for, catching, or attempting to catch fish by any method.

Sport Fishing Regulations

These regulations apply in all waters of the Northwest Territories and in the tidal waters of the provinces of Manitoba and Ontario.

1. No person shall, when sport fishing, use any live fish for bait.
2. No person shall use, or be in possession of, a gaff while sport fishing.
3. No person shall engage in sport fishing while acting as a hired guide for an angling or fishing party.



Anglers, both serious and amateur, enjoy the challenges of Arctic char in this river near Baker Lake. (photo by Brian Thompson)



4. No person shall angle in open water with more than a single line or rod and line.
5. No person shall angle in ice-covered water with more than two lines, or two rods and lines, or have more than two hooks attached to one line. He must remain within 45.7 m (50 yards) of his line or lines.
6. No person shall fish by snagging.

Catch, Size and Possession Limits

Location	Type of Fish	Daily Max. Limit	Max. Possession Limit
1. * Designated waters	Lake Trout	2	3
2. All other NWT waters	Lake Trout	3	5
3. ** Designated waters	Arctic Grayling	3	5
4. All other NWT waters	Arctic Grayling	5	10
5. ** Designated waters	Northern Pike	3	5
6. All other NWT waters	Northern Pike	5	10
7. All NWT waters	Walleye	5	10
8. *** Designated waters	Arctic Char	2	2
9. All other NWT waters	Arctic Char	4	7
10. All NWT waters	Humpback & Broad Whitefish	10	20
11. All NWT waters	Dolly Varden	4	7
12. All NWT waters	Brook Trout	3	5
13. All NWT waters	Inconnu	5	10
14. All NWT waters	Goldeye	5	10
15. All NWT waters	Rainbow Trout	3	5
16. All NWT waters	Ciscoes	no limit	no limit
17. All NWT waters	Suckers	no limit	no limit

* **Lake Trout:** waters of Great Slave Lake, Great Bear Lake and all tributaries one mile upstream, including Stark Lake and the Camsell River upstream to White Eagle Falls from which not more than one Lake Trout shall be over 28 inches fork length and no more than 2 Lake Trout may be taken away from these waters during any fishing trip.

** **Arctic Grayling & Northern Pike** — waters of that portion of the Mackenzie River and tributary streams lying between 116° West Longitude and 118° West Longitude; Arctic Grayling must have a fork length of over 14 inches. Not more than one Northern Pike shall be over 35 inches fork length. Daily maximum catch both species — 3; possession — 5.

*** **Arctic Char** — waters of Tree River entering Coronation Gulf, 137 km (85 miles) east of Coppermine. Daily maximum catch — 2; possession — 2.

N.B. For purposes of determining possession limits, where a fish has been filleted, 2 fillets shall be regarded as one fish.

7. No person shall catch, kill, molest or injure fish by using spears, arrows, gaffs, lights, sticks, stones, clubs, snares or hand nets. However, hand nets may be used to land fish caught by angling.
8. No person shall kill by angling in the Tree River any Arctic char in any year after 700 Arctic char have been taken.
9. No person shall have in his possession any fish taken by sport fishing at any place other than his permanent residence, or transport any such fish, unless the fish are:
 - a) whole,
 - b) eviscerated, or
 - c) filleted with the skin attached. (Fillets shall be separated before being frozen, so that the number of fish can be readily determined.)
10. No person shall place, or permit to be placed, in a storage facility any fish taken by sport fishing unless such fish are identified by the name and the sport fishing licence number of the person who caught them.

Note: The above regulations are provided for general guidance only. The Northwest Territories Fisheries Regulations should be consulted for more complete information. For information write: **District Manager, Dept. of Fisheries and Oceans, Box 2310, Yellowknife, N.W.T. or TravelArctic.**

Hunting

The N.W.T. is one of the world's last great hunting areas. Animals long scarce or exterminated in most of North America survive in relative abundance. Migrating caribou still blanket the land and grizzlies exist unbeleaguered here.

Now it is possible for visiting hunters to experience a wilderness hunt through the services of a Hunting Outfitter or Class B Guide. Full details are available from the **Wildlife Service, Government of the N.W.T., Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2L9.**

Residency: There are three classes of sports hunters in the N.W.T.: resident, non-resident, and non-resident alien.

A resident is a Canadian citizen or landed immigrant who has lived in the N.W.T. for 2 years.

A non-resident is also a Canadian citizen or landed immigrant but one who lives outside the N.W.T. or has not resided in the N.W.T. for a full 2 years.

A non-resident alien is someone from outside Canada.

Outfitters and Class B Guides

A non-resident or non-resident alien must use a big game outfitter or Class B guide for hunting Big Game Species.

Big game hunting outfitters operate in the Mackenzie Mountains for species like Dall sheep, grizzly and black bear, moose and caribou. They offer package trips running about one to two weeks, with meals and transportation from base communities in the Yukon and the Northwest Territories.

All hunters must retain the services of an outfitter for hunting in Zone E-1 (Mackenzie Mountains) but, in other specified areas, non-residents or non-resident aliens need only the services of a Class B guide for hunting barren ground caribou or certain other species. No guide or outfitter is necessary for hunting small game or migratory birds.

Hunters can get a list of Class B guides by writing to the Area Wildlife Officer in the community where the hunter will be based or hunting from. Wildlife Officers are stationed in most N.W.T. communities.

If a Class B guide has been retained, the hunter should apply to the Wildlife Officer in the area he wishes to hunt. A certificate, species stamps and tags should be applied for and paid for by certified cheque. The licenced Class B guide who has been hired should be named on the application.

If a hunter retains an Outfitter he should send him a cheque for the certificate, stamp fees and species tags. The Outfitter then makes application to the Wildlife Service and has the tags and paperwork ready when the hunter arrives. The stamp fees cover the whole package. Trophy fees are payable on departure.

Polar Bear and Muskox Hunts

Polar bear hunts are available upon agreement from Hunter's and Trapper's Associations in the Arctic communities. All hunters must engage the services of a Class C guide through the community's Hunters' and Trappers' Association.

Holman Island — Bookings for Polar Bear and Muskox hunts can be arranged through Qaivvik Ltd., Box 1538, Yellowknife, phone 403-873-2074 or 3616. All inclusive package from Yellowknife. Travel by dog team on sea ice for polar bear; by snowmobile for muskox. Inuit guides from Holman Island.

Sachs Harbour — Muskox hunts can be arranged through the Inuvialuit Development Corporation, Box 2000, Inuvik, N.W.T. Phone 403-979-3510.

Allen Island (Baffin Island) — Polar bear hunts can be booked through Jerome Knap, 5 Violet Dr., Hamilton Ontario. Phone 416-568-3454. All inclusive package from Frobisher Bay. Travel by dog team. Inuit guide for each hunter. Camp in tents or igloos.

Hunting Outfitters in the Mackenzie Mountains

Zone E/1-1

Mr. Stan Stevens, Box 124, Mackenzie Mountain Outfitters, Norman Wells, N.W.T. X0E 0V0, Tel: (403) 587-2255

Fly-in to base camps near old Canol Road. Horseback hunts for Dall sheep, grizzly, moose and caribou depending on season. Also river trips.

Zone E/1-2

Mr. W. E. Moynihan, Skyline Outfitters Ltd., Box 224, Gleichen, Alberta, Tel: (403) 734-2228

Horseback and backpacking hunts for Dall sheep. Also moose, caribou, grizzly, wolf and wolverine.

Zone E/1-3

Mr. Duane Nelson, N.W.T. Outfitters, Box 1144, Glenwood, Alberta, Tel: (403) 626-3279

Horseback hunts for Dall sheep, moose, caribou, wolf, wolverine and grizzly.

Zone E/1-4

Mr. H. MacAulay, Redstone Mountain, Trophy Hunts, Box 608, Banff, Alberta T0L 0C0, Tel: (403) 762-3257

Zone E/1-5

Mr. Bob Woodward, South Nahanni Outfitters, Box 586, Cardston, Alberta T0K 0K0, Tel: (403) 653-2562,

Backpack and horseback hunts for Dall sheep, grizzly, caribou, moose and wolf.

Zone E/1-6

Mr. Greg E. Williams, Nahanni Butte Outfitters, Box 491, Nanton, Alberta T0L 1R0, Tel: (403) 486-5768, (Box 933, Fort Nelson, B.C. V0C 1R0, during summer)

Fly into base camp from Ft. Nelson for Dall sheep, grizzly, black bear, moose, caribou, goat, wolf and wolverine. Two week hunts.

Zone E/1-8

Mr. Ray Woodward, Arctic Red River Outfitters Ltd., Box 1457, Lloydminster, Alberta S9V 1K4, Tel: (403) 875-0608

Fly-in and backpack hunts specializing in Dall sheep and grizzly. Base camp near Arctic Red and Cranswick Rivers.

Zone E/1-7

Gana River Outfitters, 1410 High Rd. No. 28, Kelowna, B.C. V14 7B3, Tel: (604) 763-0685

Horsepack and backpack hunts. Dall sheep, moose, caribou, grizzly, wolf and wolverine. Fly into base camps from Norman Wells for 13 and 14 day hunts in mountains and plateaus virtually untouched by man. Travel by horse to spike camps.

Fee Costs & Limits

Big Game Species	Limits	Non-resident		Non-resident Alien	
		Stamp Fee	Trophy Fee	Stamp Fee	Trophy Fee
Barren-ground					
Caribou	1, any age or sex	\$10.00	\$100.00	\$25.00	\$100.00
Moose	1, male	\$10.00	\$100.00	\$25.00	\$100.00
Woodland					
Caribou	1, any age or sex	\$10.00	\$100.00	\$25.00	\$100.00
Black Bear	one adult male or	\$10.00	\$100.00	\$25.00	\$ 50.00
Grizzly Bear	adult female	\$10.00	\$250.00	\$25.00	\$250.00
Polar Bear	without cub	\$10.00	\$500.00	\$25.00	\$500.00
Muskox	1, male	\$10.00	\$500.00	\$25.00	\$500.00
Dall Sheep	1, male	\$10.00	\$100.00	\$25.00	\$100.00
Mountain Goat	1, any age or sex	\$10.00	\$100.00	\$25.00	\$100.00
Wolf	1, any age or sex	\$10.00	\$ 50.00	\$25.00	\$ 50.00
Wolverine	1, any age or sex	\$10.00	\$ 50.00	\$25.00	\$ 50.00

TOURS

Prices are in Canadian currency and were correct at time of publication (January, 1981) but are subject to change. Many lodges and outfitters in the N.W.T. also offer package trips, including meals and transportation, from major centres in Canada and the U.S. (See Lodges and Outfitters sections.)

Ferguson Travel

Located in the Hub of the North, Hay River, Fort Smith and Pine Point. Customized tours of vicinity. Fishing trips to area lodges and Wood Buffalo National Park. **Write:** Ferguson Travel, Box 190, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0; Tel: (403) 874-6878; or Box 26, Pine Point, N.W.T., Tel: (403) 393-7221.

Goliger's Tours Ltd.

Goliger's Tours offers a wide range of independent tours to the Baffin Island region and specializes in customized itineraries. All tours are co-ordinated through full-time staff on Baffin Island, and are hosted by the local hotelier/airline personnel, who act as Goliger's representatives.

Arctic Circler

The most novel way to visit the Arctic. Unique one-night jet charters from Montreal or Toronto to Frobisher Bay, or from Vancouver or Edmonton to Inuvik. Chartered Boeing 737's leave early Friday or Saturday evenings and jet non-stop to the Arctic village. Cost: \$259 plus tax. Includes round-trip airfare, Arctic char dinner, complimentary drinks on board aircraft, guided tour of village hosted by local escorts, shopping for handicrafts. Full breakfast on return flight and personalized Arctic certificate. Tours depart weekends in June and July.

Wilderness Experience

A camping experience for the rugged adventurer and outdoors lover. Unescorted. Hike the rugged cliffs of Auyuituq National Park near Pangnirtung on Baffin Island. Cost: \$935 from Montreal; \$1,050 from Toronto. Tour includes round-trip airfare, first and last night's accommodation bunk-house style, 2 boat trips, maps, packing lists, etc. This eight-day program can easily be extended. Orientation meeting with Park Warden during first evening in Pangnirtung. Campers must provide their own tents, sleeping bags, etc. Tours depart weekly from mid-July to late August.

Clearwater Fiord

The ultimate angling experience; a fishing trip to Baffin Island where char is king. 20 hours of sunshine a day, clear streams and fiords, and an abundance of char. The camp, 60 miles from Pangnirtung, comprises of a cabin housing the kitchen and dining room, and 8 tents sleeping 2 persons each. Clearwater Fiord is a camp specifically designed for the pursuit of first class angling. Cost \$1,600 and \$1,975 for 6 to 8 days respectively, from Montreal, \$1,715 and \$2,090 6 or 8 days respectively from Toronto. Tour includes return airfare and departs weekly from mid-July to late August.

Baffin Island Adventure

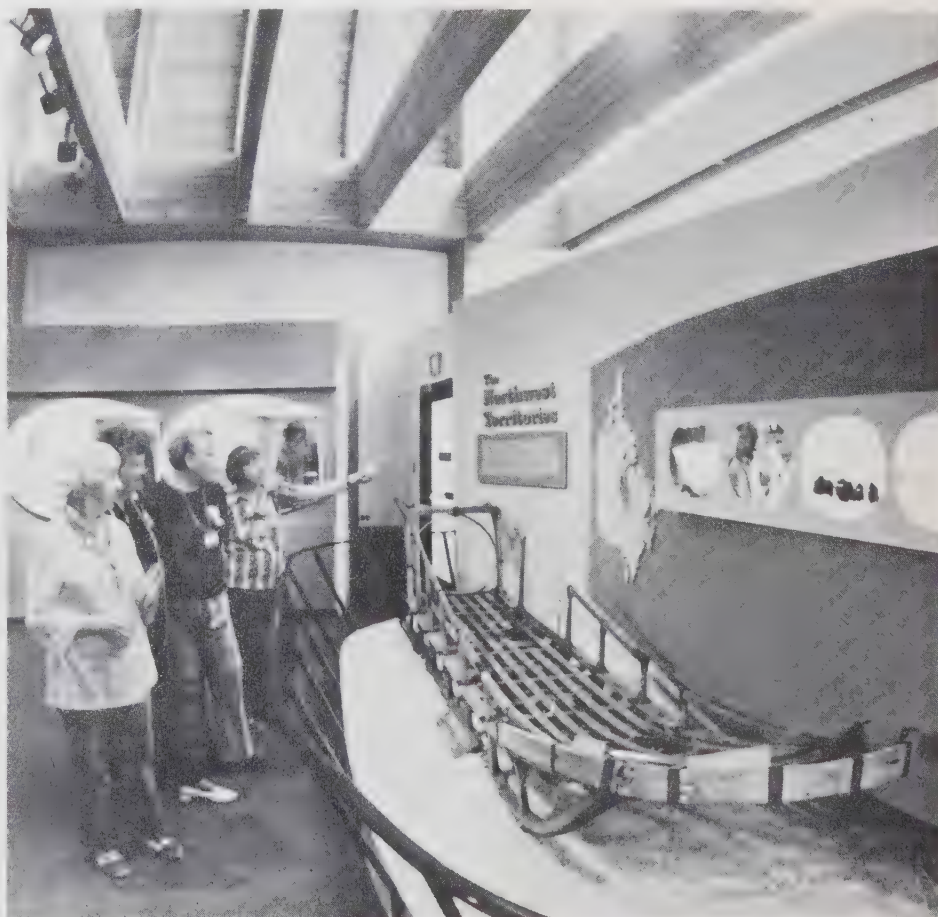
Popular nine-day tour to Frobisher Bay, Pangnirtung and Pond Inlet. Frobisher Bay provides the visitor with an insight into a modern Arctic community. Pangnirtung, the "Switzerland of the Arctic" is a pretty and peaceful settlement on the edge of a fiord. Surrounded by steeply rising mountains, Pangnirtung is a photographer's delight. Pond Inlet is located on the northern tip of Baffin Island, opposite the Bylot Island bird sanctuary. All settlements, particularly Pangnirtung, afford excellent opportunities to shop for Northern art and handicrafts. Cost: \$2,060 from Montreal; \$2,175 from Toronto. Tour includes 3 nights in Pond Inlet, 4 nights in Pangnirtung and 1 night in Frobisher Bay. Departs weekly from mid-April to mid-September. (Shorter tours also available)

Write: Goliger's Tours Ltd. 188 University Ave., Toronto, Ont. M5H 3C3; Tel: (416) 593-1448; Telex: 06-22175.

Hoag Holiday Tours Ltd.

Gold Nugget Tour

Eight-day tour from the Peace River country in Alberta to Yellowknife via the Mackenzie Highway. Visit Alexandra Falls, Louise Falls, Fort Providence, Fort Rae, Hay River, Yellowknife and other points of interest. Tour includes a visit to



The Prince of Wales Northern Heritage depicts native and pioneer lifestyles (photo by Mike van Duffelen)

a gold mine in Yellowknife, an outdoor fish fry and a Mackenzie River cruise. Travel in a new air-conditioned highway coach with a well informed guide. Hotel accommodation. **Write:** Hoag Holiday Tours Ltd., 9608 - 112 Street. Grande Prairie, Alberta. T8V 4E7. Tel: (403) 532-4624.

Horizon Holidays of Canada

Across the Arctic Circle

Fourteen-day tour by air, rail, cruise ship and private motorcoach. Fully-escorted holiday visiting Yellowknife, Inuvik, Tuktoyaktuk, Eagle Plains, Dawson City, Whitehorse, Yukon and on to Skagway, Alaska. Then take a cruise on the Inside Passage aboard P & O Cruises Sun Princess to Vancouver. Special feature of this tour is the drive from Inuvik to Dawson City across the Arctic circle on the newly opened Dempster highway. Departures June, July and August from Toronto, Montreal, Edmonton and Vancouver. Maximum 37 persons for each of 20 departures. Cost from \$2,507.

Western Arctic Adventure Tour

Fourteen days by air, rail, cruise ship and private motorcoach. Take a cruise of the Inside Passage aboard the Cunard Princess from Vancouver to Skagway, Alaska. Fully escorted holiday visiting Skagway, Whitehorse, Dawson City, Eagle Plains, Tuktoyaktuk, Inuvik and Yellowknife. This tour also crosses the Arctic Circle on the newly opened Dempster Highway. Tour departures June, July, and August from Montreal, Toronto, Edmonton and Vancouver to Skagway, Alaska. Cost: \$2,458 and up depending on departure point. Maximum of 37 persons for each of 14 departures.

Eastern Arctic Safari

Eight-day tour to Baffin Island, visiting Koluktoo Bay, Pond Inlet, Baffin fiords, Pangnirtung and Frobisher Bay. You'll find ancient Inuit campsites and narwhal calving grounds at Koluktoo Bay as well as some spectacular scenery, superb Arctic char fishing and plenty of opportunity to buy Inuit artwork and crafts. For groups on special request only. Maximum 25 persons for departures in July.

Write: Horizon Holidays of Canada Ltd., Horizon House, 37 Maitland St., Toronto, Ont. M4Y 2R9. Tel: (416) 923-1144; Telex: 06-22957.

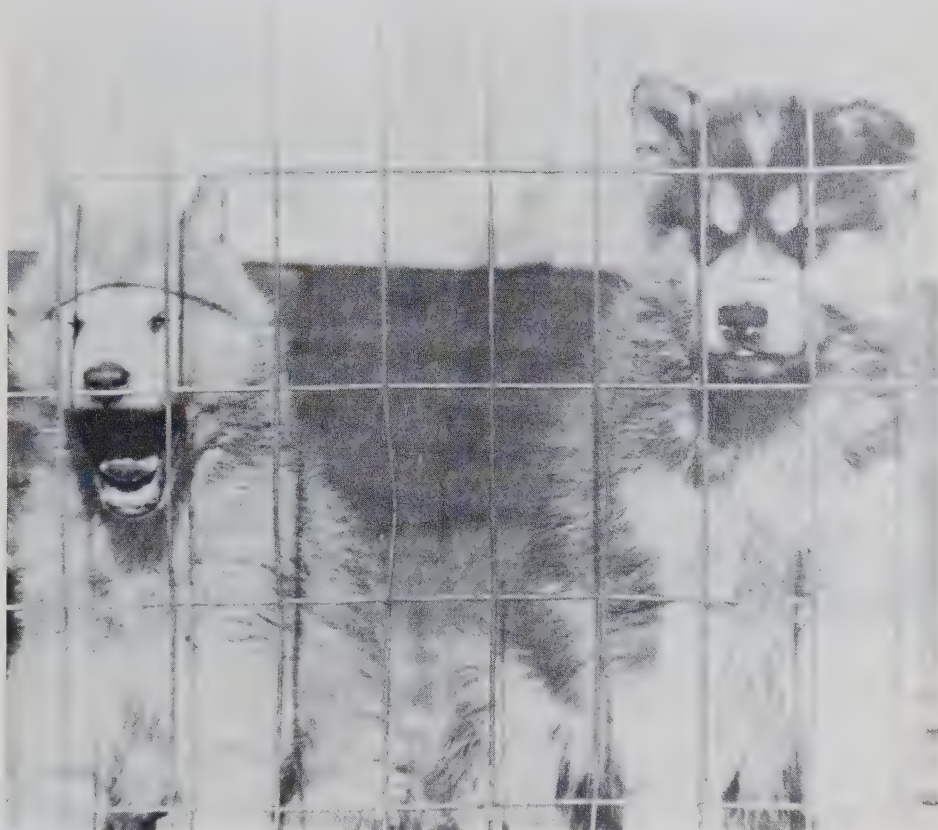
Majestic Tours Ltd.

Northwest Territories Tour

A 12-day adventure to Grande Prairie, High Level, Hay River, Pine Point, Fort Smith, Yellowknife, Peace River and Slave Lake. Tour the lead-zinc mines in Pine Point, gold mine in Yellowknife. Watch for glimpses of the white pelican

and wood bison at Fort Smith. An opportunity to watch how Inuit soapstone carvings are done. Time to tour the museums of the North and an opportunity to buy unusual souvenirs. Three nights in Yellowknife, two nights in Hay River, one night in Ft. Smith, Grande Prairie. Transportation by charter bus. Hotel/motel accommodation. Departs Edmonton June 18, July 16, August 6. Earlier departures from Saskatchewan and Manitoba. Maximum capacity 46 persons. Cost: \$679 double occupancy.

Write: Majestic Tours, Ltd., Riverside Towers, - 102 8620 Jasper Avenue, Edmonton, Alberta T5H 3S6. Tel: (403) 429-0352 or 429-0527.



Kingmiks, or the Eskimo Dogs, are enjoying a revival in the Eastern Arctic after being faced with extinction as a pure breed.

Maupintour, Inc.

Arctic Explorer Tour

A new 15-day Arctic adventure. Includes visits to the Northwest Territories, Yukon and Alaska. See the Arctic Ocean, Beaufort Sea, Klondike goldfields, Dempster Highway, Alaska Pipeline, Gulf of Alaska, Prince William Sound, Columbia and Portage glaciers, and view volcanic Katmai. Maximum capacity 30 persons. First class accommodation. Overnight in Edmonton (1), Fort Providence (1), Yellowknife (2), Inuvik (1), Eagle River (1), Dawson City (2), Tok (1), Valdez (1), Anchorage (2) and Katmai (2). Travel by motorcoach and plane. **Write:** Maupintour, Inc. Box 807, Lawrence, Kansas, USA 66044. Tel: (913) 843-1211, Telex 426237.

Pacific Western Airlines

Just the adventure for you — wilderness fishing in the remote lakes and streams of the N.W.T. These packages have been designed to suit a wide variety of holiday preferences. Select according to the type of sport fishing and the type of accommodation you prefer — rustic setting or luxury resort or pitch a tent and have a lake or stream all to yourself. Book for a week or a few days. Fly by PWA jets that go North daily. For a copy of our Great Canadian Adventures booklet, **Write:** PWA, 310-1177 W. Hastings St., Vancouver, B.C. V6E 2G5, see your nearest PWA office or consult with any travel agent.

Qaivvik Limited

Photographic — Cultural Inclusion — Arctic Spring Experience

Five to six day photographic/cultural inclusion Arctic Spring Experience from two Arctic communities. Participants live and travel on the land and sea ice with Inuit families. Travel is by traditional dog-team and sled (komatik). Caribou clothing supplied for your use. Photograph seal, bird life and possibly polar bear. Participate in traditional Inuit activities — ice fishing (jigging), observe the preparation of seal and caribou hides, feed the dogs, watch basic traditional Inuit cooking methods, sewing and camp preparation. Menu is a combination of Inuit and Kabloona (white man's) food. Accommodation provided in double-walled

tents, and igloos if weather and snow conditions permit. Heat is provided by Coleman stoves or traditional kudlik (stone lamp with seal oil). Tour available during the Arctic spring, May and June, when the sun is up 24 hours a day. For detailed information, tour dates and inclusive prices, **Write:** Qaivvik Limited, Box 1538, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0, Tel: (403) 873-2074.

Questers Tours and Travel

Northwest Canada

A 16-day adventure to Edmonton, Whitehorse, Dawson City, Inuvik, Tuktoyaktuk, Yellowknife, Fort Providence, Hay River, Fort Smith, and Wood Buffalo National Park. Special features include exploring the new Dempster Highway that links the Beaufort Sea with the south, flying over the sea to Herschel Island with its endangered peregrine falcons and gyrfalcons, driving down the highway from Yellowknife to Fort Providence, Fort Smith, Hay River, with two days in the world's second largest park — Wood Buffalo National Park and cruising on Great Slave Lake. Departs: July 3, 1981 from Edmonton; all-inclusive price \$1,920 plus \$540 airfare. **Write:** Questers Tours and Travel, Inc., 257 Park Ave. S., New York, N.Y. 10010. Tel: (212) 673-3120. Telex: RCA 236692.

Special Interest Tours, Inc.

Barrenlands Trout Fishing

Visit the northern community of Rankin Inlet. Fly by float plane over the barrens to inland lakes and a comfortable camp where anglers will find 12 to 20 pound

trophy trout. Use freighter canoes powered by outboards. Fish and explore the wilderness with experienced guides. Departs from Churchill, July 3, 1981 and August 7, 1981. Overnight in Churchill, Rankin and spend four nights at the fishing camp. Cost \$1,790.

Arctic Encounter

An introduction to the Hudson Bay region of Canada's Arctic. Depending on the season, native guides will take you to see caribou and polar bears, or the whales, seals and walrus of the area. Opportunity to purchase outstanding soapstone carvings and other works of art. Visit three communities, hike, fish, photograph this awesome area. One week with two nights each in Baker Lake and Rankin Inlet, three nights in Churchill. Departs Churchill every Monday, May through September. Cost \$1,150.

Barrenlands Grayling, Char and Trout

For those who enjoy moving water as well as lake fishing. This is the more traditional Inuit approach to fishing. Outboard powered freight canoes take fishermen upriver from Baker Lake. Tent camp along the way. Trout, grayling and char waiting for the fly rod or spinning reel, trophy fish, abundant wildlife — a true adventure. Departs Churchill July 12 and August 9, 1981 overnight in Baker Lake and five nights in camp. Cost \$1,465.

Discover the Worlds of the Arctic

A tour designed specially for those interested in the Inuit (Eskimo) and his way of life, arts and culture, and the arctic environment. Scenery and wildlife emphasized with visits to the settlements of

Holman, known for its stonecut and lithographic prints, and Grise Fiord, North America's most northerly community. Glaciers, magnificent scenery, wildlife, snowfields, it's all a photographer's dream. Lake Hazen on Ellesmere Island, 500 miles from the North Pole has excellent hiking and fishing. Departs Yellowknife, July 26, 1981. Cost \$3,055.

North Pole

A true adventure for those who seek an alternative to the commonplace. An opportunity to become one of the select few to experience the solitude and excitement of standing on top of the world. View and photograph wildlife including polar bears, muskox and Arctic wolves and the magnificent scenery of Ellesmere Island. Visit Grise Fiord — one of the most picturesque hamlets in the Arctic — and go for a sled trip on the sea ice and watch igloo construction. Departs Resolute on April 15, 1981. Cost \$5,750.

Polar Ice Cap

This adventure is designed for the visitor to fly to and land on the Polar Ice Cap which stretches across the top of the world. Lake Hazen on Ellesmere Island, approximately 500 miles from the North Pole, will be used as a staging area. Here, non-aggressive wolves, muskoxen, and Arctic hare are frequent visitors to the camp. Ice fishing and photography are favourite pastimes while waiting for the "go-ahead" signal for the final step to the ice cap. Visit Grise Fiord, the most northerly native settlement. Native guides take guests to the floe edge where whale, seals and walrus abound. Sleep in tent or igloo. Departs Resolute April 22, 1981. Eleven day trip costs \$2,790.



The polar bear, king of the Arctic. (photo by Steve Maslowski)

Arctic Wilderness and Char Fishing

Designed for those who seek the truly unique in fishing, scenic and wildlife viewing. Experience one of the untouched environments left on earth. Lake Hazen, the farthest north sport fishing camp, will be one destination. Wildlife viewing for muskox, wolves and Arctic hare are an added thrill for the visitor. Koluktoo Bay, another destination, will provide you with "keepers" in water so clear anglers can see the char attack the lure. Depart from Resolute on August 5, 1981. Cost \$2,520.

Write: Special Interests Tours, Inc., Box 37, Medina, WA 98039. Tel: (206) 455-1960. TWX: 910-443-2366 BELSECBVUE.

Local Tours

Fort Smith: Subarctic Wilderness

Adventures offers guided walking and mini-bus tours in Fort Smith and surrounding area for buffalo and pelican viewing. Tours designed for special interests. Fort Smith attractions include the Northern Life Museum and Wood Buffalo National Park centre. Phone (403) 872-2467.

Inuvik: Milehouse-Arctic Adventures offers van and walking tours in and around Inuvik. Arts and Crafts tour visits local craft outlets, craft production centres and individual artisans. Architectural tour explains development of Inuvik. Tundra and treeline tour takes visitors through various natural areas surrounding the town. A four hour river tour by boat is also available through an outfitter. Tours \$15 a person. Tel: (403) 979-2655.

Hay River: Inukshuk Tours offers three outings in and around Hay River. Tour one goes to Pine Point for a look at Cominco's lead-zinc mine, mill and open-pit operations. Tour two takes visitors through the "Old" and "New" towns of Hay River, the Indian village, Paradise Gardens market garden and to Louise and Alexandra Falls. Tour three goes to Louise and Alexandra Falls, Hart Lake, Kakisa, Lady Evelyn Falls and Fort Providence. Phone (403) 874-2216. **Write:** Box 306, Hay River, N.W.T.

Yellowknife: Two hour escorted tour of Yellowknife includes a surface tour of one of the two gold mines, a visit to the Bristol Monument, also the Pilot's Monument in Old Town. The latter offers an excellent view of Great Slave Lake and the city. Tour the Eskimo Dog Foundation and later enjoy coffee at the Wildcat Cafe. The daily trip includes stops of interest for photographers and naturalists. Maximum limit of eight people per trip. \$8.50 each. Reservations made at the city tourist cabin or phone Raven Tours at (403) 873-3131 or 2067.



Visitors to Tuktoyaktuk stroll past the restored "Our Lady of Lourdes" mission boat.

Sightseeing Buses

Bus services are available in a number of communities for charter sightseeing and for local routes.

Fort Smith: Flying Dutchman Bus Lines, Box 900, Tel: (403) 872-2727

Frobisher Bay: Okota and Paton Ltd., Box 520, Tel: (819) 979-6478

Hay River: John's Cartage and Rental Services, Box 1398, Tel: (403) 874-6426, Telex 034-4376

Inuvik: Inuvik Charter Bus Service, Box 1557, Tel: (403) 979-2631. Atlas Travel Tours, Box 4340, Whitehorse, Yukon, Y1A 3T5. Tel: (403) 668-3161.

Tuktoyaktuk: Frank Cockney, Tel: (403) 977-2520. Gruben's Transport, Box 177, Tel: (403) 977-2300. J. & J. Taxi, Tel: (403) 977-2522.

Yellowknife: Frame and Perkins Bus Lines, Box 400, Tel: (403) 873-4892, Telex 034-5518

Taxi Service

Leave the driving to the local experts and sit back and enjoy the sights and scenery. Many taxi cab companies on the highway system offer reduced hourly rates and some provide a tour of the highlights accompanied by entertaining explanations.

Taxi service is available at the following communities near the highway system and out-of-town trips usually can be arranged for those wishing to see the northern countryside: Hay River, Fort Smith, Fort Providence, Yellowknife, Pine Point, Fort Simpson, Fort McPherson, Inuvik. (Rates vary from community to community and generally can be expected to be higher than in the south.)

Hotels and Motels

Due to limited accommodation available in most Northwest Territories' communities, please make reservations as early as possible. This is especially necessary for travel in the summer months. All hotels and motels listed in this section are licenced and open year-round, unless noted otherwise. At the time of publication, there were no bell hop services in most Northwest Territories hotels. Taxi or limousine service is available to and from airports in most communities. All rates are in Canadian dollars. While the rates quoted in the listings were accurate at the time of publication (January, 1981), please note that they are subject to change. (Communities with meal service listed under Community Sketches.) There is no hotel tax in the N.W.T.

Aklavik

Torm Building

Six double rooms, two baths, TV and library lounge, full kitchen facilities. Write: Manager, Torm Building Cafe, c/o Mrs. Rudy Tornow, Box 133, Aklavik, N.W.T. X0E 0A0. Tel: (403) 978-2231.

Baker Lake

Baker Lake Lodge

Cabin facilities for 20 guests. Private dining room. Write: Baker Lake Lodge, Baker Lake, N.W.T. X0C 0A0. Tel: (819) 793-2905.

Iglu Hotel

Accommodates 32, colour TV in rooms, conference facilities, lounge. Dining room seats 44. Rate \$77/night including meals. Write: Manager, Baker Lake, N.W.T. X0C 0A0. Tel: (819) 793-2763.

Cambridge Bay

Ikaluktutiak Hotel

Nineteen rooms can accommodate 40 people. TV. Dining room for guests only, craft shop, convention facilities for 50 people. \$65 single, \$55 double without meals. \$96 single, \$86 double with meals. American Express, VISA. Write: Manager, Box 38, Cambridge Bay, N.W.T. X0E 0C0 Tel: (403) 983-2215 or 2201. Telex: 034-4214.

Cape Dorset

Kingnait Inn

In the heart of the Inuit arts village of Cape Dorset on Baffin Island. Accommodations for 12. Rates: \$80/night single, includes all meals. Proprietor Sandy Reynolds. Tel: 8863 or 8847.

Coral Harbour

Esungarq Motel

Situated at Coral Harbour on Southampton Island, this four-room motel accommodates 14 guests and features a dining room, showers. Rates: \$75/night, including all meals. The motel is owned by the Katudgevik Co-operative and is operated by the Inuit people of the village. Write: Manager, Coral Harbour, N.W.T. X0C 0C0. Tel: (819) 925-9926 or 9969.

Coppermine

Igluo Inn

Accommodates 40 guests in two units. Colour TV, dining room, taxi service for hotel guests. Rates \$70 single, \$100 double. Arctic char fishing nearby; boats and guides available. Write Red Pedersen, Igluo Inn, Coppermine, N.W.T. X0E 0E0. Tel: (403) 982-3333.

Enterprise

Motel El Camino

Sam's Place at junction of Highways 1 and 2. Open all year. Near scenic spots on highway. Motel, cocktail lounge and restaurant. Shell service station, non-leaded gas available, general store, ice and propane. Fourteen unit motel accommodates 45, cribs available. Write: Box 277, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0.



The Iglu Hotel at Baker Lake is one of 49 hotels which accommodate visitors in 33 N.W.T. communities. (photo by Brian Thompson)

Tel: (403) 984-3501 or 984-3361 (day), Enterprise, N.W.T. (or contact your travel agent).

Eskimo Point

Ootakevik Motel

A four-room motel to accommodate 12 guests. Rates: \$75.00/night, including all meals. Write: Padlei Co-operative Association, Eskimo Point, N.W.T. X0C 0E0. Tel: (819) 857-2933.

Fort Liard

HRV Holdings

Hotel has 8 rooms, 6 with kitchenettes, and can accommodate 18. Rate \$35/single, meals extra. Write: HRV Holdings, Fort Liard, N.W.T. Tel: 4441.

Fort McPherson

Roberta's Motel

Located just off the newly-built Dempster Highway, 12 rooms accommodate 12 guests. Dining room. Handicrafts made locally to order. Write: Robert Alexie, Box 64, Fort McPherson, N.W.T. X0E 0J0. Tel: (403) 952-2211.

Fort Norman

Bear Rock Lodge

Accommodates 15. Central showers, basins, toilets; separate dining facilities. Rate: \$50, includes meals or \$28 without meals. Overlooking Mackenzie River at the mouth of the Great Bear River. Picturesque community in the shadow of Bear Rock. Northwest Territories' oldest church nearby. Write: Bear Rock Lodge, Fort Norman, N.W.T. X0E 0K0. Tel: (403) 588-4441 or 588-4311. Arrange meals and rooms in advance.

Fort Providence

Big River Motel

On Highway 3 near Fort Providence. Open all year. Accommodates 18 in six units with bath. Rates: \$25 single, \$30 double. Service station, restaurant and cocktail lounge nearby. Write: Z. Demir, Big River Service Centre Ltd., Fort Providence, N.W.T. X0E 0L0. Tel: (403) 699-4301. VISA, Master Charge.

Snowshoe Inn

Modern facilities overlooking the mighty Mackenzie. Year-round accommodation for 63 people in 35 units, full bath,

phones, color TV, kitchenettes. Rates: \$38 single, \$40 double, \$48 twin. Cafe, licensed dining and cocktail lounge, banquet and convention facilities. General store, Dene and Inuit handicrafts, fishing trips arranged. Write: Snowshoe Inn, Fort Providence, N.W.T. X0E 0L0. Phone (403) 699-3511. Chargex, Master Charge.

Fort Resolution

Beaulieu's Motel

Accommodates eight in four units, TV, radio, bath, shower and nearby cafe in summer months. Write: Angus Beaulieu, Fort Resolution, N.W.T. X0E 0L0. Tel: (403) 394-2161.

Fort Simpson

Fort Simpson Hotel

Located near the confluence of the Mackenzie and Liard Rivers. Open all year. 37 rooms, all complete with tub and shower. Room phones, restaurant, licensed dining room, cocktail lounge. All-weather road to south. Write: Box 248, Fort Simpson, N.W.T. X0E 0N0. Phone (403) 695-2201.

Fort Smith

Pelican Rapids Inn

In downtown Fort Smith. Modern motel with all conveniences. Fifty rooms accommodating 130, carpeted, each with full bath, telephone, radio, color TV, plug-in. Rates: \$37 single, \$45 double. Kitchenettes available, — \$40 single, \$48 double. Meeting room accommodates 20 people. Write: Box 52, Fort Smith, N.W.T. X0E 0P0. Tel: (403) 872-2789.

Pinecrest Hotel

Open all year. Accommodates 48 in 28 rooms. Rates: single, \$29; double, \$35. Phones, color TV. Cocktail lounge, licensed dining room, coffee shop. Near Wood Buffalo National Park. Write: Manager, Pinecrest Hotel, Fort Smith, N.W.T. X0E 0P0. Tel: (403) 872-2104. VISA.

Frobisher Bay

Frobisher Inn

Located in Astro Hill complex in Frobisher Bay. Accommodates 100 in 45 rooms, all with bath, TV and phone. Rates: \$60 single, \$70 double. Licensed dining room, cocktail lounge, coffee shop, coin laundry facilities. Convention facilities available. Fish freezing. Write:

Manager, Box 610, Frobisher Bay, N.W.T. X0A 0H0. Tel: (819) 979-5241. Master Charge, VISA.

Inuit Hotel

Accommodation for 24 in 12 rooms. Rate: \$40 single, \$60 double. TV and phones in rooms. Licensed dining room, snack bar. Dining facilities incorporated in the Continental Take-out Service. Write: Inuit Hotel Ltd., Box 158, Frobisher Bay, N.W.T. X0A 0H0. Tel: (819) 979-5555. Master Charge, VISA.

The Staff House

Located near the airport. Accommodates 55 in 45 rooms. Dining room and TV, lounge. Rates \$44 single, \$78 with meals; \$60 double, \$128 with meals. Special and group rates available during winter months. For info and reservations write or phone: General Mgr., Suite 15, 1390 Sherbrooke St. Montreal. Tel: (514) 849-3551.

Grise Fiord

Grise Fiord Hotel

Newly renovated, accommodates 14 in 7 rooms. All modern conveniences, cooking facilities, lounge. Rates \$56 without meals; \$82 with meals. Write: Grise Fiord Eskimo Co-op, Grise Fiord, N.W.T. X0A 0J0. Tel: (819) 9913.

Hay River

Caribou Motor Inn

In the new section of Hay River. Open all year. Twenty-nine rooms accommodates 90 guests. Rates: \$35 single, \$38 double, twin beds \$44. Kitchenettes \$40 single, \$45 double. Room phones, radios, TVs, plug-ins, full baths in all rooms. Licensed cocktail lounge and restaurant. Write: Box 1114, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Tel: (403) 874-6706. Chargex, Master Charge, Amex.

Mackenzie Place

The tallest building in the N.W.T., located in downtown Hay River. Furnished apartments to rent by day, week or month. Rates \$40/day or \$150/wk. Every apartment has cooking facilities and is supplied with pots, pans and cutlery. Colour TV available. Tel: (403) 874-2535. Write: Box 1880, Hay River, N.W.T. Accepts VISA.

Migrator Motel

Located in new section of Hay River. Eighteen large rooms and six kitchenettes. Phone, TV, baths, showers, plug-ins. Rates: \$35 single, \$38 double. Write: Box 1847, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Tel: (403) 874-6792.



Ptarmigan Inn

Full-service hotel in the centre of town. Open all year. Accommodates 85 in 43 rooms, all with TV, ice, radio, telephone. Rates: \$44.50 single or double. Cocktail lounge, bar, coffee shop, dining room, banquet room. Write: Box 1095, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Tel: (403) 874-6781. Telex 034-4259. Visa, Master Charge.

Holman

Arctic Char Inn

Opened in 1979, four rooms accommodate 12. Restaurant, TV. Rates: single \$60, double \$44, triple \$36 per day. Meals \$26.50. Guided tours can be arranged. Write: Manager, Holman Eskimo Co-operative, N.W.T. X0E 0S0. Tel: (403) 396-3531. Reserve in advance.

Igloolik

Igloolik Hotel

Two units can accommodate 14 people. Rate: \$65/day including meals. Proprietor Mark Evaluarjuk. Phone (819) 934-8823 for reservations and information.

Inuvik

Eskimo Inn

Open year-round. Accommodates 158 in

79 rooms, bath, radio, telephones, TV. Rates: \$60 single, \$70 double. Two cocktail lounges, licensed dining room, coffee shop, convention and banquet facilities seating up to 50 people. Gift and native handicrafts shop nearby. Write: Box 1740, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-2801 or Telex 034-44519 or contact your travel agent. AmEx, Master Charge, VISA and Enroute.

Finto Motel

Located at junction of Marine Bypass and Mackenzie roads. Thirty-one rooms accommodate 47 guests. All have phone, TV (cable), radio, refrigerator, sink, private bath or shower. Laundry, truck rentals and car plug-in services available. Rates: \$40 single, \$52 double, \$45 for kitchenette, \$60 for 1 b.r. suite. Anton's licensed dining lounge open for breakfast, lunch and dinner. (French cuisine). Write: Manager, Box 1925, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-2647. Telex 034-44518. VISA, Master Charge and Amex.

Mackenzie Hotel

Open all year. Accommodates 90 in 40 rooms. Licensed dining room, banquet room, two licensed lounges, coffee shop, dining room, tavern, telephone, colour TV, radio in most rooms. Rates: \$50-\$70. No charge for second person, seventh day free. Two conference/banquet rooms seating 140 and 100. Write: Box 1618, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-2861 or Telex 034-44553. Master Charge and VISA.

Norman Wells

Norwel Inn

Ten-room hotel, open year-round, accommodates 20. Rooms feature telephone, color television, radio, bath and shower. Cafeteria and cocktail lounge. Contact: Leo Hardy or Ric Coulthard, Box 67, Norman Wells, N.W.T. X0E 0V0. Tel: (403) 587-2345 or 2354. Telex: 034-46517. Chargex, Master Charge.

Pangnirtung

Peyton Lodge

Accommodates 32 in 16-room motel open year-round. Central bath and shower facilities. Dining room and lounge with radio and TV. Rates: \$80/day including meals. Side trips to spectacular Clearwater Fiord by boat for char fishing, sealing and sightseeing. See listing for Clearwater Fiord Tent Camp under Lodges and Camps. For reservations Oct. 1 through March 31. Contact Ross Peyton, Pangnirtung, N.W.T. X0A 0R0. Tel: (819) 437-8955.

Pine Point

Pine Point Hotel

Open year-round. Accommodates 60 in 30 rooms, six suites. Rates \$40 single, \$45.50 double. Cocktail lounge, licensed dining room, TV, radio, ice, telephone. Banquet facilities for 60, convention facilities for 25. Nearby attractions include tours of lead-zinc mines. Write: Box 148, Pine Point, N.W.T. X0E 0W0. Phone (403) 393-2851. Telex 034-4252. Master Charge, AmEx, VISA.

Pond Inlet

Toonoonik-Sahoonik Hotel

Open all year, 11-room hotel accommodating 42 guests, with TV, central bath and shower, dining room for 40 people, and lounge. Discounts for conferences booking entire hotel. Owned by Toonoonik-Sahoonik Co-operative and operated by the Inuit people of Pond Inlet. Write: Hotel Manager, Pond Inlet, N.W.T. X0E 0S0. Tel: (819) 899-9928.

Rankin Inlet

Rankin Inlet Lodge

Located on west shore of Hudson Bay. Open year-round. Accommodates 58 in 29 rooms. Bath and phone in all rooms, dining room with home cooked meals, licensed lounge, craft shop featuring carvings by Joe Kavik, Prime Okalik, Tiktak. Rates: \$55/single. Outfitting services available for Arctic char, lake trout, whitefish and grayling and sightseeing. Tourist camp at Ferguson Lake. We also cater to small conventions. Write: Ross Weitzel, Manager, Rankin Inlet, N.W.T. X0C 0G0. Tel: (819) 645-2807. VISA, Master Charge.

Resolute Bay

The Staff House

Accommodates 24 in 12 rooms. Dining room, TV lounge, central showers. Free limo service to airport for guests. Rates: \$35/single, \$50 double without meals. \$70/single, \$120/double with meals. Tel: (819) 252-3858, Box 180, Resolute Bay, N.W.T. X0A 0V0. No credit cards.

International Explorer's Home

Accommodates 10 in a home setting. \$50/day, meals included. Write Bezal Jesudason, Box 200, Resolute Bay, N.W.T., X0A 0V0. Tel: (819) 252-3875.

Sachs Harbour

Banks Island Lodge

Comfortable, modern facility at Sach's Harbour accommodates 10 in 5 rooms. Summer season only or by prior arrangement in winter. Rates: \$150 per person includes meals. Tel: (403) 873-2595 or, in summer, (403) 690-4191. Write: Banks Island Lodge, Box 820, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0.

Sanikiluaq

Amaulik Motel

Run by the Inuit of the Mitiq Co-operative Association in Sanikiluaq in the Belcher Islands. Accommodates 16 in four-room motel with dining room. Rates: \$75 per day, including meals. Served by scheduled flights. Write: Manager, Mitiq Co-operative Association, Sanikiluaq (The Belcher Islands), N.W.T. X0A 0W0. Tel: (819) 266-8917 or 266-8860.

Spence Bay

Paleajook Hotel

Accommodates 10 persons in 4 rooms. Full washroom facilities, TV, radio, kitchenette facilities available on prior arrangement. Rates: \$50 without meals, \$80 with meals. Nearby attractions include famous Spence Bay Craft Shop, and numerous fishing lakes within walking distance. Write: Paleajook Co-op,

Spence Bay, N.W.T. X0E 1B0. Tel: (403) 561-5221.

Tuktoyaktuk

Beaufort Inn

Located on the airport road leading into town. Fourteen double rooms. Three housekeeping units with kitchenette facilities (sink, water, fridge and stove) as well as a bathroom with shower, sink and toilet. Other six regular motel rooms include complete bathrooms and large desks. All rooms have telephones and color TV. Restaurant seats 60. Rates \$55/single. \$65/double. Write: Beaufort Motel, Box 60, Tuktoyaktuk, N.W.T. X0E 1C0. Tel: (403) 977-2381. Telex 034-44502.

Tuktoyaktuk Lodge

Motel on the shores of the Arctic Ocean. Accommodation for 15 in seven rooms. Summer season only. TV in lounge, baths. Dining room seats 15. Write: Manager, Tuktoyaktuk Lodge, Tuktoyaktuk, N.W.T. X0E 1C0 or Dr. Herb Schwartz, Bragg Creek, Alberta. Tel: (403) 977-2325.

Wrigley

Rocky Island Cafe Cabins

One housekeeping cabin with electric range, refrigerator and radio. Rates: \$35 per person per day; \$5 extra daily for more than two people. Write: Petanea Co-operative Association Ltd., Wrigley,

N.W.T. X0E 1E0. Tel: (403) 581-3121. Telex 034-4342.

Yellowknife

Explorer Hotel

Modern 120-room hotel accommodates 150 guests. Convention and banquet facilities serve as many as 450. Licensed dining room, lounge, tavern, cafeteria, gift shop, sauna and hot tub Jacuzzi. All rooms with TV, phones, baths and showers. Air-conditioned. Rates: \$54 single, \$64 double. Reduced winter rates. All major credit cards. Write: Manager, Postal Service 7000, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-3531. Telex: 034-45582.

Gold Range Hotel

Located in downtown Yellowknife. Open year-round. Accommodates 72 in 42 rooms, 18 with private bath, all with telephones. Rates \$25 single, \$30 double. Banquet facilities accommodate up to 40 persons. Write: Box 698, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-4441.

Twin Pine Motor Inn

Forty-four-room motel halfway between Yellowknife's colorful Old Town and the city centre accommodates 150. Breakfast service available; some rooms equipped with cooking facilities. Rooms have telephones, television, radio, bath and showers. Rates: \$43 single, \$48 double. Two conference rooms. AmEx, Chargex, Master Charge. Fly-in fishing trips arranged. Contact: Twin Pine Motor Inn, P.O. Box 596, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2N4. Tel: (403) 873-8511.

Yellowknife Inn

In centre of town. Open year-round, 157 rooms accommodate more than 250 guests. Rates: \$46.50 to \$51.50, no charge for second occupant. Phone, TV, bath, showers, radio, room service, ice, soft drinks, newsstand, cafeteria, lounge, licensed dining room, tavern, two banquet rooms, souvenirs, two suites available for meetings. AmEx, Master Charge, Cdn. Pacific, Chargex/VISA. Write: Manager, Box 490, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2601. Telex: 034-45524. Reservations phone (403) 873-3984.

YWCA

Accommodates 119 in 43 rooms. TV lounge, bath/shower. 30 private kitchenette apartments, linen and dishes supplied, \$25 per night. 10 shared cluster units, furnished and equipped-kitchen privileges, \$15/night. 3 overnight shared units, no cooking facilities \$10/each night. Write: YWCA, Box 1058, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-4767.



Lodges & Camps

Prices per person, in Canadian funds, were correct at time of publication (January, 1981) but are subject to change. Except where otherwise noted, address inquiries to the lodge or camp at address shown. There is no tax on accommodation in the N.W.T.

Fort Smith Area

Hanging Ice Fishing Lodge

Five log cabins accommodate 9 on Schaefer Lakes, 32 km (20 miles) north-east of Fort Smith. Lake trout, walleye, northern pike. Lodge open from spring break-up to fall freeze-up, usually mid-May to late October. Bring your own tackle but guides, boats, motors and meals provided. Rates includes fly-in trip to Taltson Lake outpost camp and return flight to Fort Smith from lodge. Other rates for shorter stays and additional side trips. **Write:** Box 148, Pine Point, N.W.T., X0E 0W0. Tel: (403) 393-2851; Telex: 034-4252.

Lady Grey Outfitters

On Lady Grey Lake, N.E. of Fort Smith. Cabins, guides, boats and motors. Rates: \$70 per day. Lake trout, whitefish, northern pike. **Write:** Karl Hoffman, Box 364, Fort Smith, N.W.T. X0E 0P0. Tel: (403) 872-2095.

Pilot Lake Cabins

On Pilot Lake, 46 km (29 mi) N.E. of Fort Smith. Accommodates 15 in 4 self-contained housekeeping cabins. Open June 15 to Sept. 15. Rates: \$60 per day per person, plus airfare. Lake trout and northern pike. Guests must supply fishing tackle and food. **Write:** Reg Clarke, RR4, Vermillion, Alta. T0B 4M0. Tel: (403) 853-4423 or 853-2704 for information and reservations.

Hay River Area

Brabant Lodges

On Brabant Island in the Mackenzie River 51 km (32 miles) by air from Hay River. Accommodates 30 at main camp, six in outpost cabins. Boats, motors, fuel, cold storage, meals, lodging and fishing licence provided. Cocktail lounge, telephone, guide service and angling equipment available. Excellent Arctic grayling, walleye, northern pike and whitefish angling. Open June 20-Sept.

15. Write for rates. Convention facilities. **Write:** Brabant Lodges, Territorial Hotels Ltd., L2 6 Heritage Drive S.E., Calgary, Alta. T2H 2B8. Tel: (403) 253-4343. Telex 038-25591. Radio-phone at lodge. AmEx, VISA, Canadian Pacific, Master Charge.

Deegahni Lake Camp

Located 200 km (125 mi) from Hay River. Accommodates 10 in 2 log housekeeping cabins. Fully equipped with propane stoves and fridges. Boats, motors, gas, linens supplied. Good pickerel, northern pike and whitefish. Cameron Hills area has abundant wildlife, bush trails, sandy beaches. Rates: \$50 per day, \$250 per week plus transportation. Hay River to camp return airfare \$90 - \$150 each, family rates. **Write:** Don Fergusson, Deegahni Lake Camp, Box 1114, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Tel: (403) 874-6706. Radio-phone SR 1628. Master Charge, VISA.

Nonacho Lake Fishing Camp

On Nonacho Lake 346 km (215 miles) east of Hay River. Lake trout and northern pike. Cabin accommodation for 22 plus an outpost camp for 12. Rate: \$550/week, includes round-trip from Hay River, boats, motors, gas, sleeping bags, shower and housekeeping facilities. Customer supplies food and tackle. Store at camp and freezing facilities. Side trips can be arranged. Ice fishing in winter. Summer fishing June 1-Sept. 15 for lake trout, pike and whitefish. **Write:** Merlyn Carter, Carter Air Service Ltd., Box 510, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Tel: (403) 874-2281.

Rutledge Lake Lodge

Located 274 km (170 miles) east of Hay River. Fishing for lake trout and northern pike. Modern, fully-equipped housekeeping cabins can accommodate up to 20. Rates include Lund boats, motors, gas, landing nets, life jackets. All you need is fishing tackle and food. Rates: \$525 (including aircraft charter to lodge) per week. Open June 1-Sept. 30. **Write:** Box 342, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Tel: (403) 874-2571. Telex 034-4333.

Thubun Lake Lodge

On South Thubun Lake 142 miles east of Hay River. Accommodates 22 in fully equipped housekeeping cabins. Open June 1 to Sept. 15. Rates: \$50/day plus airfare. Price includes Lund boats, motors, gas and life jackets. Basic food items, liquor and tackle available in camp store. **Write:** Bob Jameson, Box 1098, Hay River. Tel: (403) 874-6327 or 6722.

Yellowknife Area

Blachford Lake Lodge

On Blachford Lake, 96 km (60 miles) east of Yellowknife. Accommodates 10 in comfortable log cabins. Excellent hiking and cross-country skiing. Fish for lake trout, northern pike, pickerel (walleye) from June 1 to Sept. 30 or enjoy skiing during winter months. Rates: \$45/day includes boats, motors and life jackets. Transportation, food and fishing gear not supplied. Air transportation can be arranged. Special family rates available. **Write:** Qaivvik Ltd., Box 1538, Yellowknife, N.W.T., X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2074 or 3360.

Hearne Lake Lodge

On Hearne Lake 68 km (42 miles) by air from Yellowknife. Open June 1 to Sept. 30. Accommodates six. Cabin, boats, motors and cooking facilities supplied. Lake trout, Arctic grayling and northern pike. Transportation, food and fishing equipment not supplied. **Write:** Latham Island Airways, Box 791, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2891 or contact your travel agent.

Katimavik Lodge

Fishing for northern pike, whitefish and lake trout on Gordon Lake, 95 km (60 miles) north of Yellowknife. Accommodates 12 guests. Rates: \$1,365 for seven nights, all inclusive from Yellowknife, four nights \$920; three nights \$760. Nearby attractions include gold mines, rockhounding. Open June through September. **Write:** Box 2607, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2P9. Tel: (403) 873-5551. Telex 034-45529.

Namushka Lodge

On Harding Lake, 51 km (32 miles) by air east of Yellowknife. Offers fireplace and bar, home-cooked meals, baths and showers, guide, boats, motors, fuel, tackle, fish filleting and freezing facilities. Rates: \$900/week or \$155/day, includes return airfare from Yellowknife. Groups of eight or more may reserve the lodge exclusively for their own use. Accommodates 12. Excellent hiking, rockhounding and bird-watching (bald eagle nesting area). Open June 10 - Sept. 20. Fishing for northern pike, lake trout and walleye. **Write:** Namushka Lodge, Box 2304, Yellowknife, N.W.T., X1A 2P7 or call Yellowknife (403) 873-8081.

Prelude Lake Lodge

On Prelude Lake, 32 km (20 miles) east of Yellowknife off Hwy. 4. Trout, pike, walleye. Open May 15-Sept. 30. Accommodates 15. Housekeeping cabins \$25-\$35/cabin. Boats \$7-8/hour, (includes gas and safety equipment). Restaurant, ice, tackle, store, licensed dining lounge. Falls on Cameron River nearby. In winter, cross-country skiing, rentals, cabins opened by pre-arrangement. New conference facilities. **Write:** Box 2548, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2041. Summer radio-phone 2M-4315 between 4-5 p.m.

Stagg Lake Lodge

On Stagg Lake 77 km (48 miles) N.W. of Yellowknife. Accommodates 15 in light-housekeeping cabins. Excellent hiking, rockhounding and bird watching. Fish for lake trout, walleye, whitefish and northern pike. Open June 15 to Sept. 15. Rates: \$40 per day, includes boats, motors, gas and life jackets. Transportation, food and fishing equipment not included. Air transportation can be arranged. Special family and group rates available. **Write:** Box 1005, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Tel: (403) 874-2969, Telex 034-04340. Radio-phone (summer) JS 5477.

Watta Lake Lodge

The lodge is 68 km (42 miles) by air east of Yellowknife. Fly-in fishing for lake trout, grayling, northern pike, walleye and whitefish. Can accommodate 12 plus five in tent camp on Buckham Lake, 4 km (2.5 miles) from lodge via trail. Open June 1-Sept. 30. Rates: \$850/week or \$135/day (min. four days), includes return air charter from Yellowknife, boats, motors, fuel, home-cooked meals, guides, radio-phones, trolling equipment, fish cleaning and freezing. **Write:** Site 484, Box 6, R.R.4, Sherwood Park, Alberta, T8A 3K4. Tel: (403) 467-4857 or 962-2891. Summer radio-phone at lodge (Hay River operator) YJ 25496.

Great Slave Lake Area

Arctic Star Lodge

On the north shore of McLeod Bay in the east arm of Great Slave Lake, 222 km (138 miles) east of Yellowknife. Sheltered bay, beautiful setting. Accommodates 32 in fully-modern carpeted rooms, twin beds, bathrooms, lounge, bar, dining area, spacious and comfortable. Excellent cuisine. Open June 21 - Sept. 12. Rates: \$1,695/week, includes meals, boats, motors, guides, return airfare from Yellowknife. Facilities include walk-in freezer for fish storage, filleting and packing for shipping. Fishing for trophy lake trout, grayling, northern pike. Side trips arranged for sightseeing and fishing. Four- and five-day stays also available. Small conferences. **Write:** In winter —

P.O. Box 475, Belleville, Ont., K8N 5B2. Tel: (613) 966-1496. In summer — Box 939, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 920-4541.

Frontier Fishing Lodge (Jerry Bricker's)

At Snowdrift on the east arm of Great Slave Lake, 185 km (115 miles) from Yellowknife; 701 m (2,300-foot) airstrip. Open mid June to Sept. 30. Accommodates 24 in lodge and cabins. Dining room, licensed facilities, sauna. Fish for lake trout, grayling, pike and whitefish. Walk-in freezer. Fish packed for shipping. One week (Saturday to Saturday), all inclusive Yellowknife return, \$1,480. Guides, motors, boats, gas, oil, food and lodging included. Indian village and handicrafts nearby. Conference facilities for 35. **Write:** Frontier Fishing Tours (1970) Ltd., Box 4550, Edmonton, Alberta, T6E 5G4. Tel: (403) 433-4914 or, in summer, dial direct (403) 370-3501.



Great Slave Lake Lodge (Plummer's)

At Taltheilei Narrows, 145 km (90 miles) east of Yellowknife. Open June 15-Sept. 20. Accommodates 44. From Winnipeg, eight-day trip, includes 3,540 km (2,200 miles) transportation. Charter jet from and to Winnipeg. Private 1,585 m (5,200 foot) airstrip. Meals, guides, boats, motors, gas and care of fish. Modern plumbing, two-way radio, ice, bar, dining room. Lake trout, Arctic grayling, northern pike, fly out for walleye. Five-day trips also available. For brochure and rates, **Write:** Chummy Plummer, 1110 Sanford Street, Winnipeg, Man. R3E 2Z9. Tel: (204) 772-8833. Radio-phone at lodge SI 1539.

Trophy Lodge

Fish the rugged and beautiful east arm of Great Slave Lake at Fort Reliance for lake trout and grayling. Boats, motors, tackle and fish freezing facilities. Accommodates 16 in four housekeeping cabins 257 km (170 miles) east of Yellowknife.

Rates: \$60/day. Nearby attractions include Captain Back's chimneys and Parry Falls. Open June 25 - Sept. 15. **Write:** Reliance Sport Fishing Ltd., Box 670, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-4555.

Indian Mountain Lodge

Thompson Landing, east arm of Great Slave Lake. Open June 15-Sept. 15. Accommodates 10 in five cabins. Rate: \$1,350/week. Float base, dining room, fish freezing, tackle store, boats, motors, fuel, guides. Excellent lake trout and grayling fishing. Radio-phone SI 1562. **Write:** Box 2793, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-5714 or 873-4338.

Fort Simpson Area

Trout Lake Indian Lodge

Owned by the Slavey Indians. It offers sandy beaches and pine forests, a variety of plants and wildlife, good fishing for lake trout, walleye, pike and grayling. An opportunity to visit the Slavey people, and enjoy quiet seclusion at the only camp on the 51 km (32-mile) lake. Comfortable accommodation for 14. Boats, motors, guides available. Open June 1 -Sept. 15. Rates depend on size of group and facilities required. Family and group rates available. **Write:** Area Economic Development Officer, Government of the Northwest Territories, Fort Simpson, N.W.T., X0E 0N0.

Norman Wells/ Mackenzie River Area

Colville Lake Lodge

Located on south end of Colville Lake, 58 km (36 miles) inside the Arctic Circle. Main lodge situated in Hareskin Indian Village. Accommodates 12. Dining room. Four twin-engined boats. Outpost camp 40 km (25 miles) north has two cabins, boats, motors. Twenty-four-hour fishing for trout, pike, inconnu, whitefish and grayling in summer. Canoeing and camping equipment available. Telecommunications. Rate: \$595/week. Open year-round; airstrip. **Write:** Bern Will Brown, Colville Lake, N.W.T. (via Fort Good Hope) X0E 0H0, or contact your travel agent. Radio-phone Hay River SM 1113.

Drum Lake Lodge

On Wrigley Lake, 132 km (82 miles) southwest of Fort Norman. Open June 15-Oct. 15. Accommodates nine. Guides, boat with motor, meals provided. Lake trout, grayling and dolly varden. Fishing tackle available. Hunting trips arranged for N.W.T. residents. Mountains, scenery, hiking trails, nearby attractions. Private 305 m (1,000-foot) airstrip. **Write:** Paul Wright, Fort Norman, N.W.T. X0E 0K0. Tel: 3161.

Great Bear Lake Area

Arctic Circle Lodge

On Great Bear Lake, only 22.4 km (14 miles) from Arctic Circle. Fishing for trophy lake trout, grayling, side trips for Arctic char. Boats and motors, excellent cuisine. Accommodation for 34. Rate includes accommodation, boat and guide, all meals, round-trip flight from Yellowknife. Group facilities. Open July and August. **Write:** Box 231, St. Albert, Alta. T8N 1N3 Tel: (403) 458-3383 or Box 503, Edmonton, Alta. T5J 2K1. Tel: (403) 435-6882. Summer radio-telephone.

Bransons Lodge

East side of Great Bear Lake on Cameron Bay 8 km (5 miles) from Port Radium. Scenic protected waters. Open July and August. Accommodates 40. Carpet throughout. Modern plumbing and heating. Licensed lounge. Rate: \$1,645. Eight-day package from Edmonton return. Meals, rooms, guides, boats, motors, freezing facilities, tackle shop. Side trips for Arctic char, grayling, trout, Inuit villages. Visit abandoned mine, other local historical attractions. Licences available. Convention facilities. **Write:** Box 130, Wainham, Alta. T0H 3P0. Tel: (403) 694-3838; summer radio-phone JL 25366 or see travel agent.

Great Bear Lake Lodge (Plummer's)

On Dease Arm. Open July and August. Accommodates 54 in 16 cabins with showers, flush toilets. Charter flights from Winnipeg return. Boats, motors, fuel, guides, angling equipment and cold storage. Dining room, telephone. Lake trout and grayling. Plane at lodge for side trips to Tree River on Arctic coast for char. 1,524 m (5,000-foot) airstrip. **Write:** for brochure and rates, Great Bear Lake Lodge, 1110 Sanford Street, Winnipeg, Man. R3E 2Z9. Tel: (204) 774-5775. Radio-phone at lodge SJ 1654.

Great Bear Lodge

On Leith Peninsula on Great Bear Lake. Accommodates 54. Open July - August. Boats, motors, guides, food and lodging. Modern facilities; forced air heat, bar and rec room, native handicrafts, micro wave telephone, 1800 m (6000 ft) airstrip. Lake trout, pike and side trips for char and grayling. For further details, including price, **Write:** 707 East 41 St., Suite 218, Sioux Falls, S. Dakota, USA 57105. Tel: (605) 336-2008 or talk to your travel agent.

Great Bear Trophy Lodge

In Ford Bay on Smith Arm, west side of Great Bear Lake at Arctic Circle. Open July and August. Accommodates 40 in 20 rooms with bath, twin beds, electricity,

wall-to-wall carpets, toilet, shower in every room. Rates: \$1,595 (American Plan) per week, all inclusive Edmonton return. Dining room, bar, lounge, commissary, telecommunications, boats, motors and guides, 1563 m, (5300 ft) airstrip. Lake trout, arctic char, grayling, northern pike. Wildlife nearby; air charters arranged to visit native villages. **Write:** Box 9000 Ponoka, Alta. T0C 2H0. Tel: (403) 783-4994 collect, or contact your travel agent. Radio-phone at lodge SR 1573.

Sah Tew Lodge

At Fort Franklin, on Great Bear Lake. Open July 15 to Sept. 30. Light housekeeping cabin accommodation for four, with water, oil heat, electricity. Trophy lake trout and grayling. Rate: \$40/person/day. Additional charge for boats, motors, guides. Tackle, native handicrafts and sundries available next door. Eight km (five mi) to outlet of Great Bear River. **Write:** Manager, Great Bear Co-op, Fort Franklin, N.W.T. X0E 0G0. Tel: (403) 589-2461.

Inuvik Area

Hornaday River Fish Camp

Near the community of Paulatuk, the camp accommodates eight people in tent frames. Central dining unit. Seven-day package, includes charter from Inuvik and return. Char and grayling. Operated by Paulatuk Hunters and Trappers Association. **Write:** Tony Green, Paulatuk Hunters and Trappers Association, Paulatuk, N.W.T.

Sitidgi Lake Fishing Lodge

This small personal lodge, 51 km (32 air miles) from Inuvik, accommodates six persons in two tents. The main lodge building includes a dining room and lounge. Open June 15-Sept. 15. Rates include meals and use of boats and motors (charter airfare between camp and Inuvik extra). No guides needed as excellent fishing for lake trout, grayling, pike and whitefish is in sight of the lodge. Photograph moose, caribou and bird life. Tel: (403) 979-3349. **Write:** Andy McInnes, Box 1332, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0.

Keewatin Area

Camp Chantrey

At mouth of the Back River, open July 8 to August 20. All inclusive seven-day trip from Fort Francis, Ont., \$2,200/week. Accommodates 18. Eskimo guides, boats, etc. Arctic char, trophy lake trout, grayling. Two-way radio. **Write:** Northern Wilderness Outfitters Ltd., Box 637, Fort Francis, Ont. P9A 3M1. Tel: (807) 274-3666.

Dubawnt Outpost Camp

Located at Outlet Bay on Dubawnt Lake. Accommodates up to six in heated, carpeted tent frames. All inclusive package with air charter from Winnipeg return. Two guests per tent. Daily maid service, comfortable beds, central shower, meals, guides, boats, motors, fuel. Separate dining tent with picture window. Radio at camp. Open July 10 to Aug. 30. Trophy lake trout. **Write:** Keewatin Arctic Camp Co. Ltd., 2639 Portage Ave., Winnipeg, Man. R3J 0P7. Tel: (204) 885-5217. AmEx, VISA, Bank Americard, Master Charge.

Dubawnt West Sport Fishing Camp

On Dubawnt Lake. Accommodates 8. Open July and August. Grayling and lake trout. For more information and prices **Write:** Dubawnt Camps Ltd., Nestor Falls, Ontario. Tel: (807) 484-2126.

Ekaluk Lodge

Located on the Thelon River at the outlet of Schultz Lake. Arctic char, trophy lake trout and Arctic grayling. Accessible by float plane or by a 48 km (30 mile) boat ride from Baker Lake up the scenic Thelon River. Accommodates eight in four heated cabins, central shower, two-way radio. View caribou, grizzly, wolves and foxes. Rates: \$1,600/week includes air fare from Winnipeg. **Write:** Ekaluk Lodge, Baker Lake, N.W.T. Tel: (819) 793-2949.

Kasba Lake Lodge

Located 426 km (265 miles) northwest of Lynn Lake, Man. Accommodates 38 in cabins. Meals served in main dining room. Rates: \$1,620 for seven days, all-inclusive from Winnipeg return. Lake trout, grayling and pike. Guides available at \$45/day extra. **Write:** D. E. Hill, Box 96, Parksville, B.C. V0R 2S0. Tel: (604) 248-3572. Lodge radio-phone: XOW 254 via Selkirk, Man.

Keewatin Arctic Lodge

On South Henik Lake. Open July 5 to September 10. Accommodates 12 with meals, boats, guides, motors, fuel. Comfortable modern lodge with carpeted bedrooms, daily maid service, toilet and showers in each room. Electricity and fish freezing. Arctic char, lake trout, whitefish and grayling. Private 1,219 m (4,000-foot) airstrip. All-inclusive from Winnipeg return. Radio at lodge. **Write:** 2639 Portage Ave., Winnipeg, Man. R3J 0P7. Tel: (204) 885-5217. AmEx, VISA, Bank Americard, Master Charge.

Lynx Tundra Camp

On the northeast shore of Lynx Lake at the headwaters of the Thelon River in the barrenlands. Main cabin with cooking and dining facilities. Three tent frames accommodate eight. Aluminum boats, motors, etc. Rate: \$1,025/week, includes meals,

guides and return airfare from Yellowknife. Open July 1-Sept. 7. Fish for lake trout, grayling, pike and whitefish. **Write:** Henry J. Faess, Box 733, Red Lake, Ont. P0V 2M0. Tel: (807) 727-2543. (winter), Box 125, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Radio-phone SR 1710.

Morberg's Smalltree Camp

Located on island in middle of Smalltree Lake on Dubawnt River system. Comfortable tent camp. Separate dining tent and kitchen. Accommodates maximum of 4 guests. Open June 20 to Sept. 1. Trophy lake trout, northern pike and grayling. Radio at camp. Comfortable beds, food, fuel, boats, motors, guides. Includes 1-2 nights at beautiful Morbergs main lodge on Black Lake. All inclusive package from Winnipeg. **Write:** Morbergs Wilderness Lodge, 2639 Portage Ave., Winnipeg, Man. R3J 0P7. Tel: (204) 889-8347. AmEx, VISA, Master Charge.

Tukto Lodge

On Mosquito Lake, Dubawnt River system. All inclusive 6 day trip from Ft. Frances, Ontario. Fish for lake trout and Arctic grayling. Comfortable cabins, central dining room. Radio at camp. Open July and August. **Write:** Dubawnt Camps, Box 6, Nestor Falls, Ontario P0X 1K0. Tel: (807) 484-2126.

Neultin Narrows Sub Arctic Camp

Just below the tree line in the Keewatin area north of Manitoba on Neultin Lake. Accommodates eight in tents. Rate: \$795/week, all inclusive from Lynn Lake. Lake trout, grayling and pike 91 m (100 yards) from camp. Trophy only, no freezing facilities. Guests can view the old native camping structures on the nearby island. **Write:** Bill and Beth Bennett, Box 935, Campbellford, Ont. K0L 1L0. Tel: (705) 653-3280. (winter), Box 669, Lynn Lake, Man. Tel: (204) 356-2457.

Obre Lake Lodge

In a sheltered bay on the shore of Obre Lake, 406 km (252 miles) north of Lynn Lake, Man. Cabins set in forest up from sandy beach. Accommodates 14. Licensed dining room. Airstrip. Lake trout, grayling and pike. Open June 10 to Sept. 20. Rate: \$1,085/week, includes guides and airfare from Lynn Lake return. **Write:** Stan Geddes, Box 568, Lynn Lake, Man. R0B 0W0. Tel: (204) 356-2621. Lodge radio-phone: XNQ 408.

Snowbird Lake Lodges

Snowbird Lake Lodge and Snowbird Kazan River Lodge, 130 miles from the nearest settlement and 273 miles from the closest road. Trophy lake trout, arctic grayling, northern pike. Transportation by chartered aircraft to Stony Rapids, Saskatchewan from Minneapolis return. Accommodation in heated cabins with

hot and cold running water, carpeted floors, electricity, single beds with mattresses, and all-modern bathroom facilities. Price all-inclusive except for licenses, bar purchases, and gratuities. Fish freezing and insulated take-home cartons supplied. Special consideration for conventions and conferences. **Write:** Snowbird Enterprises Ltd., Box 1006, Burnsville, Minn. USA 55337. Tel: (612) 435-5021.

Baffin Area

Clearwater Fiord

The ultimate angling experience; a fishing trip to Baffin Island where char is king. 20 hours of sunshine a day, clear streams and fiords, experienced Inuit guides and an abundance of char. The camp, 60 miles from Pangnirtung, comprises a cabin housing the kitchen and dining room; and 8 cabins sleeping 2 persons each. Clearwater Fiord is a camp specifically designed and built for the pursuit of first-class angling. Cost: \$175/day, all inclusive from mid-July to late August. **Write:** Ross Peyton, Peyton's Lodge, Pangnirtung, N.W.T. Tel: (819) 437-8955.

Koluctoo Bay

Located on the Robertson River, 112 km (70 miles) southwest of Pond Inlet, Koluctoo Bay is a fishing camp on Baffin Island. Open mid-August to mid-September. Private airstrip. Nearby attractions include ancient Inuit campsites and narwhal calving grounds. Handicrafts and tackle available. Rates: \$185/day or 6 days, all inclusive from Toronto, \$1,995. Accommodates 16 in tents. **Write:** Viking Adventures, Unit 151, 1915 Denmar Rd., Pickering, Ontario, L1V 3E1. Tel: (416) 683-6119.

Lake Hazen Lodge

Accommodates 24 in the world's northernmost fishing camp on Ellesmere Island 660 km (410 miles) north of Grise Fiord. Excellent Arctic char fishing. Photograph muskoxen, wolves, polar bears. Nine-hole golf course on polar ice under summer sunshine. Great alpine and cross-country skiing. Guides available. Transportation can be arranged from Resolute Bay. Rates: \$125 per person per day including meals and guides. **Write:** Bezal Jesudason, Box 200, Resolute Bay, N.W.T. Tel: (819) 252-3875.

Viking Fish Camp

Seven days on Melville Peninsula. From Toronto or Montreal fly to Hall Beach. Camp is located on Hall Lake, 12 minutes by Twin Otter from Hall Beach. Heated tent camp accommodates 24, 2 persons per tent. Full cooking facilities with cook provided. Fresh caribou meat supplied by local guides. English guides

also provided. Shore and boat fishing for Arctic char and lake trout. Freighter canoes available at camp. A draw enables two fishermen per week to accompany Inuit guides to photograph caribou hunt. Cost: \$1,595, all inclusive. **Write:** Viking Adventures, Unit 151, 1915 Denmar Road, Pickering, Ontario L1V 3E1. Tel: (416) 683-6119.

Hudson Bay

Grande Ile Hunting Lodge

At the confluence of the James and Hudson Bays, 170 km (105 miles) by air Northwest of Radisson, Quebec. A key stopping-off point for countless thousand geese. Hunting for Canada Goose, Lesser Snow Goose, Blue Goose, Ducks. Offers fine cuisine, bar, toilets, sinks and showers, guides, preparation of the bag. Accommodates 24 persons. Open August 17th - August 31 for nature trips, bird-watching, special meetings; from August 31 - October 2nd for goose hunting. Rates: \$150 - \$200 per day per person. Full American Plan. Air transportation additional. **Write:** Grand Ile Hunting Lodge, c/o Sotour Inc., 800 de Maison-neuve Blvd. East, Room 1100, Montreal, Quebec H2L 4M6. Tel: (514) 284-0270.

Cambridge Bay Area

Arctic Char Lodge

Eighty-four km (52 miles) northeast of Cambridge Bay, 3 km (2 miles) southwest of Albert Edward Bay on Victoria Island, 362 km (225 miles) inside the Arctic Circle. Open July and August. Accommodates 24 in heated, framed tents, plus modern main lodge. Showers, smoke house, fish freezing, handicrafts and tackle store. Arctic char and lake trout. Guides, boats and motors; 1220 m (4,000-foot) airstrip. Gas available. Regular side trips to Hadley Bay. Float plane at camp. Bird watching in early July. Muskox have been sighted. **Write:** Box 99, Glendon, Alberta T0P 1P0. (winter address) R.R. 4, Box 86, Garner, Iowa, U.S.A. 50438 Tel: (515) 923-3350.

High Arctic Sportfishing Camps

Main camp on Merkley Lake, with outpost camp on Hadley River, Victoria Island; 138 km (86 miles) northwest of Cambridge Bay; fish for trophy Arctic char and lake trout. Accommodates nine. Open July 15-Aug. 31. Eskimo handicrafts available in Cambridge Bay and Holman Island. Good possibility of seeing Arctic wildlife such as muskoxen, Arctic fox, ptarmigan and snowy owls, caribou. Rate: \$1,895 includes accommodation, meals, boats, motors, guides, float plane flights from Cambridge Bay and all side trips to outpost camp. **Write:** Don Hamilton, Box 450, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Tel: (403) 874-2626.

Outfitters & Naturalist Facilities

You can take escorted wilderness tours by every means — from horseback to canoes or cabin cruisers — with experienced licensed outfitters. Some of these firms can also rent you gear and provide basic transportation for a trip on your own. Prices in Canadian funds.

Central Arctic

Black Feather Wilderness Adventures (see Nahanni area)

Canoe Arctic Inc. (see Keewatin Area)

High Arctic International Explorers Services

Organizing snowmobile expeditions to anywhere in the High Arctic. Can arrange tours to North Magnetic and Geographic Poles, Beechey Islands and photo safaris for wildlife and historic sites. Also four day skidoo trips between Resolute and Grise Fiord in spring (April to June) over sea ice; canoe trips in summer (July and September). Winter gear — clothing, tents, sleeping bags, stoves and camping equipment are provided. Interpreter also available for those who want to acquaint themselves with the Inuit culture. Photograph polar bear, muskox, seal, wolves, walrus and whales; char fishing. **Write:** Bezal Jesudason, Box 200, Resolute Bay, X0A 0V0. Tel: (819) 252-3875.

Ikaluktutiak Co-op Outfitting Service

Fly in from Ikaluktutiak Hotel to proven fishing for arctic char and trout. Renowned area for bird watching/photography. All camping equipment and fishing tackle supplied. **Write:** Manager, Ikaluktutiak Hotel, Cambridge Bay, N.W.T. X0E 0C0. Tel: (403) 983-2215 or 983-2201.

Baffin

Allooloo's Outfitting Service

Boat charters for Arctic char fishing, wildlife photography and sightseeing tours in the Pond Inlet area. Titus Allooloo owns

and operates a 7 m (22-foot) fiberglass boat. Food and camping equipment supplied, except sleeping bags. **Write:** Titus Allooloo Outfitting Service, Pond Inlet, N.W.T. Tel: (819) 8817 or 8813.

Aqvik

Write: Gary Magee, Aqvik Ltd., Pangnirtung, N.W.T., Baffin Island X0A 0R0. Tel: (819) 437-8879 or 437-8905.

Baffin Kamutauyait

Outfitter located on Baffin Island, offering photo safaris, winter snowmobile touring from Frobisher Bay to Lake Harbour. Summer boat cruises around Frobisher Bay. Also on the premises, Pitavik Inuit Art Gallery. Also backpacking into mountains around Frobisher Bay and fishing for Arctic char. **Write:** J. Webster, Baffin Kamutauyait, Box 575, Frobisher Bay, N.W.T. X0A 0H0. Tel: (819) 979-5544.

Baffin Travel and Charter Service

Fishing charters for Arctic char and sightseeing tours in the Frobisher Bay and south Baffin area. Operated by a local Inuit family. View wildlife such as walrus, whale, seal. Cooking utensils, tents and general gear supplied. Clients expected to supply own food, sleeping bags and fishing equipment. Operating July, August, September. **Write:** Ben Kovic or Ben Ell, Baffin Travel and Charter Service, Box 73, Frobisher Bay, N.W.T. Tel: (819) 979-5859.

Grise Fiord Eskimo Co-op

Outfitters offer a variety of spring, summer and fall trips to explore old Inuit villages, view muskox, seal, walrus and narwhales, walk on mountain glaciers, fish for arctic char. Five spring and one fall trip by skidoo — two summer trips by boat. Rates: \$125/day includes room, meals, guiding services and entertainment. Scheduled package tours — one week from Resolute Bay also includes return air fare from Grise Fiord —

\$1,395. **Write:** Manager, Grise Fiord Eskimo Co-op, Grise Fiord, X0A 0J0. Tel: (819) 980-9913.

Ikaluit Umiat Voyages

Boat tours offered around Frobisher Bay for wildlife viewing, sightseeing, photography and fishing. **Write:** Rick Hamburg, Tourism Office, Government of the N.W.T., Frobisher Bay, N.W.T. Tel: (819) 979-5311.

Tongait Outfitters

Take a side trip for char fishing while visiting Auyuittuq National Park and the Pangnirtung Pass. Tent camp established on Kingnait Fiord, a short boat ride from Pangnirtung. Guided fishing or rent a canoe and go fishing on your own. Opportunities for photographing whales and walrus. Rates: \$100/day per person. All inclusive package tours from Montreal being organized. **Write:** Jerome Knap, 5 Violet Dr. Hamilton, Ont. L8E 3J2. Tel: (416) 560-3454.

Yellowknife Area

Great Slave Lake Cruises

Featuring a 11 m (36 ft.) cabin cruiser for luxury voyages anywhere on Great Slave Lake. Also, one 9 m (30 ft.) sport cruiser. Meals and sleeping accommodation on board for overnight trips. Also two- or three-hour cruises of Yellowknife Bay and islands with special stops for fishermen, naturalists or rockhounds. Both boats can sleep four to six. Boats radio-equipped. Rates: one to five people minimum, \$75 for two-hour cruise. Six people and up, additional \$15 each. Rates on request. **Write:** Fred Henne, Great Slave Cruises, Box 1470, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-4892 or 873-2138. Telex 037-45518.

M. & M. Co.

Fish for trophy lake trout, grayling, whitefish and northern pike on Great Slave Lake. Observe bald eagles and other wildlife and photograph unique northern scenes. Or just relax and enjoy a holiday away from it all. We offer a wide variety of packages. Charter one of our cabin cruisers starting as low as \$65 per person/day, based on a 3 day trip for a party of 5 or more. **Write:** M & M Company, Box 414, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-4863.

Mauronna II Boat Cruises

Cruise Great Slave Lake on an 8 m (26 ft.) cabin cruiser. Relax and enjoy the clear waters, unusual scenery, numerous birds and fine fishing. Weekend fishing trips available. Hourly, daily and weekend rates, June to Sept. **Write:** Mauronna II Boat Cruises, Box 534, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-4250.

N.W.T. Wilderness Cruises

Custom trips on Great Slave Lake, June 10 to Oct. 20, on board M.V. Silver Belle 13 m (42 ft.) or M.V. Hearne Channel 14 m (45 ft.). Fishing, photography, rock hounding or naturalist tours. Meals, guides, small boats, fishing equipment supplied. Guests can arrange itinerary to suit interests: prospecting, fishing for trout, grayling, pike, walleye, inconnu; nature hikes, old mine sites, etc. Two to four person maximum. \$1100 per person per week. **Write:** David Smith, N.W.T. Wilderness Cruises, Box 2547, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2018.

Raecom Air Ltd. (Eve Comrie)

Fly from Yellowknife to three remote fishing lakes teeming with trout, pike, pickerel, grayling and whitefish, or camp in the wilderness above the treeline and photograph grizzly bears, wolves, caribou. All camping equipment supplied, except for food and fishing tackle. Can accom-

modate as many as seven persons at a time, June 15-Sept. 1. **Write:** Raecom Air Ltd., Box 2865, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-6557.

Snowcraft Cruises

Fishing excursions a specialty. 8 m sports fishing boat can take anglers out for lake trout, northern pike and Arctic grayling. Meals, tents and camping equipment supplied. Bring fishing tackle and sleeping bags. Also cater to rockhounds, photographers and naturalists. Arrangement can be made for hourly trips or extended excursions. **Write:** Fred/Bernice Nowicki, Box 2006, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-5391.

your group to various prime fishing locations. Scenic trips to Tuktoyaktuk, Aklavik, Fort McPherson, Arctic Red River or Whitefish Whaling Station are available. Custom tailored trips may be prearranged with knowledgeable staff for fishing, sightseeing, photography or just to view the beautiful Mackenzie Delta. For overnight trips, tents, fishing gear and cooking utensils are supplied. Very reasonable rates range from \$25 to \$50 per hour. **Write:** Jim Gordon, Box 1183, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-2176.

East Three Tours and Outfitting

Guided river tours from Inuvik to various locations in the Mackenzie Delta aboard the 10 m (32-foot) MV Otter. Highlight your stay at Inuvik by boating across the Delta to Aklavik, returning by air. Can arrange bookings for aircraft charters to superb fishing areas. Custom work as well as midnight tours, hourly rates. **Write:** East Three Tours & Outfitting, Box 2356, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-3111.

Inuvik Area

Beluga Tours

Charter boats by the hour, day or week. Experienced guides will escort you or



Magnificent scenery is just a short step from northern communities such as this unnamed waterfall near Pangnirtung.

(photo by Crombie McNeil)

Midnite Arctic Tours

Travel the ice road to Aklavik and Tuktoyaktuk. Visit Fort McPherson. While in Aklavik, visit the grave of the infamous "Mad Trapper of Rat River" and browse in an original Arctic trading post. This and more for visitors who plan their vacations during March and April. In summer, fly out for excellent pike, whitefish and grayling fishing; restaurant, charter aircraft, tackle and fish-freezing facilities available. **Write:** Midnite Arctic Tours, Box 1812, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-2333.

Nahanni Area

Black Feather Wilderness Adventures

Fly-in canoe trips on the Nahanni, Hanbury, Thelon and Coppermine rivers, July and August. Complete outfitting included in price. Small parties of cooperative self-reliant individuals. Trip leaders focus on skills instruction, safety control and nature interpretation. Information and planning services available. Chargex, Mastercharge. **Write:** Trail Head, 1341 Wellington St., Ottawa, Ont. K1Y 3B3. Tel: (613) 722-4229.

Deadman Valley Outfitters

Fly to Fort Simpson, N.W.T., on the Mackenzie River for the start of a boat trip adventure into the heart of Nahanni National Park. Return boat trip to Virginia Falls takes five days, accommodating maximum of five people per week. All gear can be supplied. Operates June 15 to September 15. Group rates on request. Scheduled airline flights to Fort Simpson. **Write:** Rod Norwegian, Box 406, Fort Simpson, N.W.T. X0E 0N0. Tel: (403) 695-3126.

North-West Expeditions Limited

Raft trips on the South Nahanni River from Virginia Falls to Nahanni Butte. Side hikes to hot springs and other areas of interest. Opportunity for fishing and personal exploration. Eleven day, all-inclusive trips, \$1,480. Guests may assist in paddling or rowing the river rafts. Operates from July to September. **Write:** North-West Expeditions Limited, 105 West 6th Ave., Vancouver, B.C. V5Y 1K3. Tel: (604) 879-6701; Telex: 045-4686.

South Nahanni River

River trips via jet boats up the fabled South Nahanni River to Virginia Falls and/or the exciting Liard or Flat rivers. Guests may join trip at Fort Simpson with a minimum of six days return; at Nahanni Butte, minimum of four days return. Can accommodate 10 people. Guests are responsible for airfare to Nahanni Butte. Season: June to Sept. For reservations **Write:** Earl Gordon, 205 - 212 - 7 Ave.



Tundra scenery, wildlife viewing and excellent char and lake trout fishing can be enjoyed on trips in the Keewatin area. (photo by Brian Thompson)

S.W., Calgary, Alberta T2P 0W6. Tel: 266-2125 or Pete Cowie, Box 256, Fort Simpson, N.W.T. Rates upon request.

Rates: \$100/day for first couple; \$50/day for each additional couple. **Write:** Sonny Newman, Box 1561, Hay River, N.W.T. Tel: (403) 874-6478.

Southern Mackenzie

Big River Service Centre Ltd.

Fishing trips in Mackenzie River and Great Slave Lake areas arranged from Fort Providence. Native guides available. Must supply own gear, tents, sleeping bags, etc. Boat rentals, aircraft charters can be arranged. **Write:** Big River Service Centre Ltd., Fort Providence, N.W.T. X0E 0L0. Tel: (403) 699-4301.

Snowshoe Sportfishing

Outfitters on the "Mighty Mackenzie River." The base at Ft. Providence is easily accessible by road, air and water. Excellent fishing for trout, grayling, pickerel and pike. Aircraft will take you to outpost camps for trout. Fishing trips for two range from \$10 to \$600. Boats, motors, guides by the hour, day or trip. Cruise on nearby Mackenzie River and fly-in fishing to Willow Lake. A complete stock of angling supplies, groceries, meats, produce, clothing, gas and oil, propane, ice and fish-freezing facilities. Mastercharge and VISA. **Write:** Snowshoe General Store, Fort Providence, N.W.T. X0E 0L0. Tel: (403) 699-4321 or 3551.

Sonny Newman River Trips

The southern Great Slave Lake area offers many back country rivers — the Hay, Buffalo, Little Buffalo and Slave. Trips tailored to group, time, interest and experience running from break-up to Sept. 1. Rapids, falls, good fishing, rock hounding and wildlife photography.

Subarctic Wilderness Adventures

Offers 1/2 to 8 day variety of year round wilderness big game (bison, caribou, wolf) and bird viewing, white and flatwater boating, also winter camping and dogsledding fundamentals. Learning by participation. Trips in Wood Buffalo National Park and Precambrian Shield area near Ft. Smith. Rates vary from \$15 to \$1500 and cover transport, meals and lodgings while "on adventure". Proprietor — Jacques van Pelt. **Write:** Subarctic Wilderness Adventures, Box 685, Fort Smith, N.W.T. X0E 0P0. Tel: (403) 872-2467.

Keewatin Area

Arctic Waterways

Offers the comfort and safety of modern inflatable rafts for an Arctic wilderness trip on the Coppermine River. Maximum of 8 people. See falcons, eagles, wolves and caribou in this unspoiled land. Fish for Arctic char and grayling. Trips guided by I. Remmler and top notch river men. Guided tundra hikes. Two weeks, all inclusive. \$1,295. **Write:** Arctic Waterways, RR2, Stevensville, Ont. L0S 1S0. Tel: (416) 382-3882.

Baker Lake outfitters

The Baker Lake area offers fine fishing, wildlife, and fine Inuit crafts such as carving, prints and tapestries. There are five outfitters in Baker Lake. All are equipped with freighter canoes and outboard motors. Outfitting from Baker Lake to the

Thelon, Kazan and other smaller rivers draining into Baker Lake for wildlife viewing, photography and fishing trips to Kazan Falls. **Contact:** David Tagoona, Tel: (819) 793-2926; Sigyamiut, Tel: (819) 793-2914; William Scottie, Tel: (819) 793-2717; William Aupaluktuk, Tel: (819) 793-2957; Hugh Tularialik, Tel: (819) 793-2793.

Canoe Arctic Inc.

Fly-in canoe trips in remote areas of tundra and taiga, including Thelon and Coppermine rivers. Photograph caribou, white wolves, muskox, birdlife. Excellent fishing. Small groups (six to eight) assembled and guided exclusively by Alex Hall, wildlife biologist and veteran Arctic canoeist. All food and equipment provided. Can accommodate a limited number with no previous canoeing experience. Routes selected for compatibility with clients' interests and capabilities. Two-way radio. June 1-Sept. 15. Rates from \$1,210 (12 days), \$1,570 (18 days). Yellowknife or Fort Smith return. **Write:** Canoe Arctic Inc., Box 130, Ft. Smith, N.W.T. X0E 0P0. Tel: (403) 872-2308.

Walrus Safari

Longliner cruises to view walrus and polar bear to Coates Island on Hudson Bay. Also a renowned sea bird nesting area. Individual tours arranged from one

day to one week or longer. **Write:** Hamlet Council, Coral Harbour, X0C 0C0. Tel: (819) 925-9949.

Scott Lake Outfitters

On Scott Lake. June 15 to Sept. 15. Lake trout and northern pike. Fish freezing and packaging facilities, licenses, boats, motors and guides. **Write:** M. N. Woloshyn, Box 757, Uranium City, Sask. S0J 2W0. Tel: (306) 498-2270. Radio-phone at lodge XNP 890.

Naturalist Facilities

Banks Island Lodge

A comfortable, modern facility at Sachs Harbour, a small Inuit community on Banks Island in the High Arctic. Guided tours to observe and photograph muskox, Beaufort Sea whales and seal, glimpse the rare snowy owl, enjoy flora and fauna areas north of the 72nd parallel. Scheduled flights. **Write:** Banks Island Lodge, Box 820, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2595 or Sachs Harbour (summer) (403) 690-4191. Telex: 034-5564.

Bathurst Inlet Lodge

A small and exclusive naturalists' haven 48 km (30 miles) north of the Arctic Circle that caters to birdwatchers, photographers, anglers, rockhounds, ar-

tists and all those wanting a real Arctic adventure. It offers spectacular scenery, a wide variety of tundra plant life and wildlife, a rare opportunity to observe the traditional ways of the Inuit people and the quiet seclusion of the only lodge on the inlet. Arctic animals such as caribou and muskox are common as well as many migratory birds. Good char and trout fishing nearby. Lodge radio-telephone. Weekly rate includes air charter from Yellowknife, guided tours by water and land, food and accommodation. Charter aircraft available at Lodge. June 15-Sept. 1. Top references. **Write:** Bathurst Inlet Developments Ltd., Box 820, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2595. Telex: 034-5564.

Oldsquaw Lodge

A rustic lodge located on a gentle alpine plain in the Mackenzie Mountains near the Yukon border. It is an ideal refuge for the naturalist, birdwatcher, photographer and canoeist. There's a wide mixture of high arctic, alpine, and boreal flora and fauna. Species readily seen include gyrfalcons, moose, and woodland caribou while grizzlies, wolves, and Dall sheep are occasionally observed from the Lodge. Guided tours are available and weekly rates include all services as well as the charter flight to the Lodge. Season — July 1 to October 1. Accommodates 10 in five log cabins. **Write:** Oldsquaw Lodge, Box 2940, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2R2. Tel: (403) 873-5525 after 6 p.m.



Rafting trips are increasing in popularity. Visitors can float the Nahanni, Coppermine or the Slave River pictured here. (photo

by Mike van Duffelen)

TRANSPORTATION Services



Airlines

There are direct, regularly-scheduled passenger services into the N.W.T. from connecting national and international flight centres such as Edmonton, Winnipeg and Montreal. From within the N.W.T., additional passenger flights are available on a scheduled or charter basis.

Air Canada serves the northern gateway airports of Edmonton, Winnipeg and Montreal. C.P. Air serves Whitehorse as well as these three cities. A number of United States and foreign airlines serve Canadian international airports at Edmonton, Calgary, Winnipeg and Montreal, among others, enabling travellers to reach their Northwest Territories destinations via modern airliners. Your travel agent can recommend the easiest air route to the North.

Scheduled Services into the N.W.T.

Austin Airways, Box 1160, Timmins, Ont. P4N 7H9, Tel: (705) 264-9521, Telex 067-81603 (Scheduled and charter services)

Bases: Cape Dorset, N.W.T. X0A 0C0
Tel: (819) 897-8860

Weekly scheduled service to Cape Dorset on Baffin Island from Timmins, Ont., via Great Whale River, Que., Port Harrison, Povungnituk, Akilivik, Ivugivik, Sugluk. Overnight stop required at Great Whale or Povungnituk.

Calm Air International Ltd., (Scheduled and charter services), Box 910, Lynn Lake, Man., Tel: (204) 356-2467.

Base: Rankin Inlet
Tel: (819) 645-2846

Service: daily except Saturday from Churchill, Manitoba to Eskimo Pt., Whale Cove, Repulse Bay, Baker Lake, Rankin Inlet and Coral Harbour.

Nordair Limited, Box 4000, A.M.F., Montreal International Airport, Dorval, Que. H4Y 1B8. Tel: (514) 747-5592, Telex 05-826806

Bases: Frobisher Bay, N.W.T. X0A 0H0
Tel: (819) 979-5331 Telex 06-315516;
Resolute Bay, N.W.T. X0A 0V0,
Tel: (819) 252-3880.

Nanisivik/Arctic Bay, N.W.T. X0A 0A0
Tel: (819) 436-7493

Hall Beach, N.W.T. X0A 0K0
Tel: (819) 928-8845

Service: Daily jet service Montreal-Toronto-Frobisher Bay. Twice weekly service to Hall Beach, Resolute Bay and Nanisivik/Arctic Bay.

Pacific Western Airlines Ltd.

9th Floor, Edmonton Inn Tower, 119th St. and Kingsway Ave., Edmonton, Alta. T5G 0X5. Tel: (403) 455-4101, Telex 037-3621. Also Winnipeg International Airport, Winnipeg, Man. R3J 0H7 Tel: (204) 632-2811 Telex 07-587717

Northwest Territories offices: (Scheduled and charter services) Cambridge Bay, 983-2434; Fort Simpson, 695-2434; Fort Smith, 872-2225; Hay River, 874-2434; Inuvik, 979-2951; Norman Wells, 587-2361; Resolute Bay, 252-3921; Yellowknife, 873-2721.

Service: Scheduled jet service from Edmonton, Winnipeg and Whitehorse to

Yellowknife, Inuvik, Hay River, Norman Wells, Fort Smith, Fort Simpson, Cambridge Bay and Resolute.

Simpson Air Ltd.

(Scheduled and charter service), Box 90, Fort Simpson, N.W.T. X0E 0N0. Tel: (403) 695-2226.

Islander Chieftain, Baron C185. Scheduled service between Ft. Simpson, Wrigley, Nahanni Butte, Ft. Liard, Ft. Nelson, B.C., and Yellowknife.

Trans North Turbo Air, Box 4338, Hangar C, Whitehorse, Yukon.
Tel: (403) 668-2177.

Five times weekly service to Inuvik from Old Crow, Dawson, and Whitehorse using DC3 or Cessna 404 Titan aircraft.

Scheduled Service Within the N.W.T.

In addition to scheduled airlines which fly into the N.W.T., a number of regularly-scheduled airlines fly within the N.W.T. For particular communities served check the Community Sketches section of this guide.

Air Providence Ltd., (Scheduled and charter services), Fort Providence, N.W.T. X0E 0L0. Tel: (403) 699-3551 or 4321.

Connecting Fort Providence with Yellowknife, Fort Simpson, Hay River, Pine Point and Fort Smith via Piper Lance. Also: Cessna 185, wheels, skis, floats. Fares and schedule from the airline.

Calm Air International Ltd., (See listing under Services into the N.W.T.)

First Air Ltd., Box 477, Frobisher Bay, N.W.T. X0A 0H0. Tel: (819) 979-5810 or 5841, Telex 063-15533

Service: DC-3, HS-78 or Twin Otter. From Frobisher Bay to Lake Harbour, Cape Dorset, Coral Harbour, Pangnirtung, Broughton Island, Clyde River. From Hall Beach to Igloolik, Repulse Bay, Pond Inlet, Nanisivik and Pelly Bay.

Kenn Borek Air Ltd., (Scheduled and charter services), Box 1159, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-3937. Telex 034-44597.

DC3 and Twin Otter service to Resolute Bay, Nanisivik, and Pond Inlet. Routes to Inuvik, Aklavik, Ft. MacPherson, Tuktoyaktuk, Sachs Harbour and Paulatuk.

Bases: Resolute Bay (819) 252-3849
Inuvik (403) 979-3937. Telex 034-44597.

Nahanni Air Services Ltd., (Scheduled and charter services), Box 123, Norman



Wells, N.W.T. X0E 0V0. Tel: (403) 587-2288. Telex 034-46537.

Service to Ft. Good Hope, Ft. Franklin and Fort Norman from Norman Wells.

Northwest Territorial Airways Ltd., (Scheduled and charter services), Bag 9000, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2R3. Tel: (403) 873-8555, Telex 034-45527. Other offices: Coppermine 2331, Telex 034-4352; Cambridge Bay 983-2441.

Twice weekly schedule service from Yellowknife to Rankin Inlet and Frobisher Bay by Lockheed Electra, twice weekly from Yellowknife to Coppermine and Cambridge Bay with a once a week stop at Lady Franklin by DC-3 and Electra aircraft. Fares and schedules available from airline. Also Lockheed Super Hercules L100-30 Cargo aircraft.

Pacific Western Airlines, (See listing under Scheduled Services into the N.W.T.)

Ptarmigan Airways Ltd., (Scheduled and charter services), Box 66, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-4461, Telex 034-45547.

Scheduled service from Yellowknife to Lac La Martre, Rae Lakes, Snowdrift, Fort Resolution, Pine Point, Hay River. Twin Otters, Piper Chieftain, Piper Navaho, Aztec, Turbo Beaver, Cessna 185, wheels, skis and floats.

Simpson Air Ltd., (See listing under Services into the N.W.T.)

Charter Service

Charter aircraft, to take you into isolated settlements and famous Arctic adventure areas, are conveniently available on reasonable advance notice. Charter aircraft rates are scaled according to the size of the aircraft used. Many of these companies have planes with pontoons in summer and skis in winter. These can be chartered at rates starting at \$.60/km (\$1 per mile)

Aero Arctic Ltd., Box 1496, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2P1. Tel: (403) 873-5230, Telex 034-45569. Aircraft: Sikorsky S-55T, Bell 206B.

Air Dogrib, Rae, N.W.T. X0E 0Y0. Tel: (403) 392-4311 or -6541. Aircraft: Cessna 185, Beaver DHC-2. Wheels, skis, floats.

Air Providence Ltd., (See listing under Scheduled Service Within N.W.T.)

Aklak Air Ltd., Willard Hagen, Manager, Box 1190, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-2303 or 979-3555. Aircraft: Cessna 185. Wheels, skis, floats, Piper Aztec, Navaho.

Aklavik Flying Service Ltd., Box 1158, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-3190, Telex 034-44528. Aircraft: Cessna 185, Cessna 337, Titan 404, T.S. 600, Aerostar. Skis, wheels, floats.

Associated Helicopters Ltd., Head Office: Hangar 10, Municipal Airport, Edmonton, Alta. T5G 2Z3. Tel: (403) 455-4157, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-3226. Aircraft: Bell 204, 206, 212, IFR 212 Aerospatiale AS 350 (Astar)

Austin Airways, (See listing under Scheduled Services into the N.W.T.)

Beaufort Air Ltd., Tuktoyaktuk, N.W.T. X0E 1C0. Tel: (403) 977-2474. Aircraft: Cessna 185: floats, wheels, skis; Cessna 337, wheels only.

Bradley Air Service, Box 477, Frobisher Bay, N.W.T. X0A 0H0. Tel: (819) 979-5810, Telex (Carp, Ont.) 053-3158. Resolute Bay, Tel: (819) 252-3981. DC-3, Twin Otter, Beaver, Beechcraft to all Arctic, including Eureka. Wheels, skis, floats.

Buffalo Airways, Box 168, Fort Smith, N.W.T. X0E 0P0. Tel: (403) 872-2216; Telex 034-4819. Bases: Fort Simpson, N.W.T. X0E 0N0. Tel: (403) 695-2404, Hay River, N.W.T., Tel: (403) 874-3333, Telex 034-4374. Aircraft: DC-3, Navaho and Gazelle, Alouette, Bell 206 and Hughes 500D helicopters.

Calm Air, (See listing under Scheduled Service into N.W.T.)

Carter Air Services Ltd., Box 510, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0. Tel: (403) 874-2281. Aircraft: Twin and single Otters.

Fort Smith Air Service Ltd., Box 415, Fort Smith, N.W.T. X0E 0P0, Tel: (403) 872-2321. Aircraft: Beaver, Cessna 185. Wheels, skis, floats.

Inuvik Coastal Airways Ltd., Box 2629, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-3372 or -3144, Telex 034-44567. Aircraft: Twin Otter on wheels.

Kenn Borek Air Ltd., (See listing under Scheduled Airlines Within N.W.T.)

Keewatin Air Ltd., 1129 Sanford St., Winnipeg, Man. R3E 3A1. Tel: (204) 774-0910 or 772-7968. Base: Rankin Inlet. Tel: (819) 645-2992. Aircraft: Cessna 402. Beavers on skis, floats, tundra

wheels. Serving the Keewatin and Melville Peninsula.

Kenting Helicopters, Hangar 10, International Airport, Calgary, Alta., Tel: (403) 277-8526, Telex 038-21732.

Koenen's Air Service Ltd., Box 233, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2285. Aircraft: Cessna 185, Super Beechcraft G185.

LambAir Ltd., Suite 901-386 Broadway Ave., Winnipeg, Man. R3C 3R6. Tel: (204) 944-9279, Telex 07-587599. Aircraft: Twin Otter, C-46, DC-3, Single Otter, Aztec.

Latham Island Airways, Box 791, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2891 or 920-2891. Aircraft: Cessna 185 and 337, DHC-2, floats, wheels, skis.

LaRonge Aviation Services Ltd., Box 320, La Ronge, Sask., Tel: (306) 425-2382. Aircraft: Twin Otter, Otter, Cessna 185, PA 23, Aztec, Beaver. Bases: Box 2489, Yellowknife, N.W.T., Tel: 873-5330.

Nahanni Air Services Ltd., (See listing under Scheduled Airlines within N.W.T.)

Normair Ltd., Box 325, Pine Point, N.W.T.

Northwest Territorial Airways Ltd. (See listing under Scheduled Service Within N.W.T.)

Okanagan Helicopters Ltd., 4391 Agar Drive, Richmond, B.C. V7B 1A5. Tel: (604) 278-5502, Telex 04-355594. Base: Box 1720, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-2875. Aircraft: Bell 206B.

Ptarmigan Airways Ltd., (See listing under Scheduled Service Within N.W.T.)

Ram Air Charter Ltd., Box 1530, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-3341, Telex: 034-44522. Aircraft: Beech Queen Air, Aztec, Cessna 414, 207, 337, 185, 172 on wheels, skis or floats.

Shirley Helicopters Ltd., Hangar 6A, Municipal Airport, Edmonton, Alta. T5G 2Z3. Tel: (403) 453-5121, Telex 037-41729. Offices: Box 1324, Inuvik, N.W.T. X0E 0T0. Tel: (403) 979-3386. Box 2404, Yellowknife X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2081

Simpson Air Ltd., (See listing under Scheduled Services into the N.W.T.)

Totem Air, Head Office: Hangar 57, Calgary International Airport, Calgary, Alta. T2P 2G3. Tel: (403) 277-9555. Base: Box 60, c/o Robert McBride, Fort Simpson, N.W.T. X0E 0N0. Tel: (403)

695-2785. Aircraft: 3 Bell 206B helicopters.

Turn-Air, Box 880, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-5877 or 5878, Telex 034-45559. Aircraft: Single Otter, Twin Otter, Cessna 185, Seneca II.

Wolverine Air Ltd., Box 316, Fort Simpson, N.W.T. X0E 0N0. Tel: (403) 695-2263. Aircraft: Three Cessna 185s, Islander, Piper Seneca II. Wheels, skis, floats. Service: Mackenzie, Liard, Yellowknife.

Charter Rates

Following is a brief summary of minimum rates for a few typical planes. All rates subject to change.

Twin Otter: up to 21 passengers or 3,000 pounds, wheels, skis or floats, \$3.30/mile.

DC-3: 30 passengers or 6,000 pounds, \$3.25/mile.

Beaver: five passengers, \$1.75/mile, wheels, skis or floats.

Cessna 185: three passengers, \$1.30/mile, wheels, skis, floats.

Navaho: twin engine, eight passengers, \$1.65/mile.

Lancer: six seats, \$1/mile.

Otter: single engine, 10 passengers, \$2.00/mile, wheels, skis, floats.

Bell 206B: helicopter, four passengers, \$395/hour plus fuel.

Bus Service

For those wishing to enjoy N.W.T. highways and who would prefer to leave the driving to someone else, regularly-scheduled bus service is available. During a six-week period in the late fall and early spring when freeze-up and break-up of the Mackenzie River occurs, there is no bus service to or from Yellowknife and other communities north of the river. (See Tours section for details on bus tours into the N.W.T.)

Canadian Coachways System
10202 - 102nd St., Edmonton, Alta.
Tel: (403) 429-4751

Daily service between Edmonton and Hay River via Peace River. Connections for Fort Providence, Rae, Edzo and Yellowknife at Enterprise three times weekly, via N.W.T. Coachlines. Fares and schedules through any Greyhound Lines office or agency.

N.W.T. Coachlines (1979) Ltd. (head office)

Box 306, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 0R0
Tel: (403) 874-2216
Yellowknife, c/o The Sportsman
873-2911

Fort Providence, c/o The Snowshoe Inn
Tel: 699-3511

Pine Point, c/o Pine Point Hotel

Tel: 393-2851

Fort Smith, c/o Pinecrest Hotel

Tel: 872-2104

Three trips per week: Yellowknife, Rae, Edzo, Fort Providence, Enterprise, Hay River. Daily trips between Hay River, Pine Point and Fort Smith except Sunday and statutory holidays. Three times weekly between Hay River, Pine Point and Fort Resolution. N.W.T. Coachlines (1979) Ltd. is part of the North American bus pass system, "Ameripass".

Vehicle Rentals

Many visitors prefer to fly to communities, then arrange ground transportation locally to see the area.

Following is a list of car rental agencies in major centres.

Cambridge Bay, Ikaluktutiak Co-op.
Tel: (403) 983-2201. Kingmik Expediting Services. Tel: (403) 983-2345

Coppermine, Igloo Inn. Tel: (403) 3333

Fort Simpson, Fort Simpson Hotel, Tel: (403) 695-2675, Telex 034-4376. Tilden Rent-A-Car (and trucks). Tel: (403) 873-2911, Telex 034-4-5532, (reservations made through Yellowknife).

Fort Smith, Avis Rent-A-Car (and trucks). Box 168, Tel: (403) 872-2216. Tilden Rent-A-Car (and trucks). Tel: (403) 872-2777

Frobisher Bay, Arctic Resources Limited. Tel: (819) 979-5813. Baffin Building Systems. Tel: (819) 979-6949.

Hay River, John's Cartage and Rental Service Ltd., Box 1398, Tel: (403) 874-6426. Tilden Rent-A-Car Service (and trucks), Box 1668, Tel: (403) 874-6668, Telex 034-4224. Avis Rent-A-Car (and trucks), N.W.T. Rentals, Box 5, Tel: (403) 874-2571, Telex 034-4333

Inuvik, Tilden Rent-A-Car (also trucks), Box 2118, Tel: (403) 979-3383, Telex 034-44566

Norman Wells, Norman Wells Transportation Ltd., Box 125, Tel: (403) 587-2416, -2491 or Telex 034-46515

Resolute Bay, Arctic Resources Ltd., Tel: (819) 252-3858

Tuktoyaktuk, J & J Taxi, Tel: (403) 977-2522

Yellowknife, Avis Rent-A-Car, Frame & Perkins, Box 400, Tel: (403) 873-4437, Telex 034-4-5518

Tilden Rent-A-Car (and trucks), The Sportsman, 5116-50th Street, Box 162, Tel: (403) 873-2911, Telex 034-4-5532

Hertz Rent-A-Car (also trucks), Air Northwest Limited, Northwest Hangar, Yellowknife Airport, P.O. Service 9000, Tel: (403) 873-5043, Telex 034-45527

Budget Rent-A-Car, Box 2585, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0, Tel: (403) 873-3366

Boat Rentals

Boats, motors, canoes and camping gear may be rented on the spot in some communities, or large boats, complete with guides, can be arranged to transport you on fishing or sightseeing jaunts. (Also see Outfitters Section)

Hudson's Bay Company, National Stores Department, 77 Main St., Winnipeg, Man. R3C 2R1. Tel: (204) 943-0881

Canoes may be rented from the Hudson's Bay Company with advance reservations made through their above address. Arrangements can be made to pick canoes up at one point and leave them at another where there is a Bay post.

Fort Franklin, Great Bear Co-op, Tel: (403) 589-2461

Fort Providence, Big River Service Centre Ltd., Tel: (403) 699-4301. Snowshoe General Store, Tel: (403) 699-4321 or 3551.

Fort Smith, Subarctic Wilderness Adventurers, Box 685, Tel: (403) 872-2467

Hay River, John's Cartage & Rental Services, Box 1398, Tel: (403) 874-6426, Telex 034-4376.

Hay River Sports and Hobby, Box 1168, Tel: (403) 874-6668, Telex: 034-4224. R.A.M. Enterprises Ltd., Box 342, Tel: (403) 874-2571, Telex 034-4333

Inuvik, Milehouse-Arctic Adventures, Box 1800, Tel: (403) 979-2655.

Tuktoyaktuk, Charles Gruben, Tel: (403) 977-2343

Yellowknife, Precambrian Mining Services Ltd., Box 190, Tel: (403) 873-4431

Prelude Lake Lodge, Box 2548, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X0E 1H0. Tel: (403) 873-2041, or in summer radio-telephone 2M-4315 (4-5 p.m.) The Sportsman, Box 162, Tel: (403) 873-2911, Telex 034-4-5532 Yellowknife River Boat Rentals, Box 1343, Tel: mobile 2M4654

Read About Us

A comprehensive Arctic bibliography would fill many volumes. The following list, however, contains many classics, as well as recent works on the contemporary northern scene.

Travel Assistance

General Travel Information

TravelArctic, Government of the N.W.T., Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2L9. Publishers of this guide, road maps, posters, canoeing and free travel counselling.

Motoring Information

The Milepost is an excellent, all purpose guide for motoring to the N.W.T. Detailed route information on NWT and British Columbia, Yukon, Alberta and Alaska. Northwest Publishing, Box 4EEE, Anchorage, Alaska, U.S.A. AK99509.

Airport Information

Chief, Airports Division, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife. Also, consider buying a copy of "On Track," a pilot's flight planning guide — diagrams and aerial photos of Canadian airports and charts. Skylark Aviation, 7314 Hunterdown Cresc., Calgary, Alta.

Maps

There are maps to guide you while in the air, on the water or hiking; available through the **Canada Map Office**. They include geological maps, land use and topographical maps and mariners' maps from the smallest scale to the one-inch-to-one-mile variety. Write for their index of Northern Regional Maps before ordering any specific map.

Canada Map Office,
615 Booth Street,
Ottawa, Ontario K1A 0E9

In Yellowknife, maps are available from the Mining Recorder's Office in the Bellanca Building (Tel: 873-4421). However, in the peak visitor season some maps may be temporarily out of stock, so it is advisable for parties heading into the wilderness to have their maps on arrival in the Northwest Territories.



Dog teams, once almost displaced by snowmobiles, are enjoying a small revival in the N.W.T.

A large stock of topographical maps, aeronautical maps, WAC charts, hydrographic charts of the Arctic (including Alaska) and various government publications of interest to mariners is available from:

Charts Unlimited,
Box 1038,
Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 1G0
(Tel: 874-2516)

Canoeing

"**Rivers North**" provides general information on canoeing in the N.W.T. and briefly describes a number of routes. Available from TravelArctic, Yellowknife, N.W.T. Free.

"Sailing Directions, Great Slave Lake and Mackenzie River," Information and maps of the route. Canadian Hydrographic Service, Marine Sciences Directorate, Environment Canada, Ottawa.

Browning, Peter. "The Last Wilderness." An account of a canoe trip in wilderness east of Great Slave Lake. Chronical Books, 1975.

Morse, Eric W. "Fresh Water Northwest Passage." The Royal Canadian Geographical Society, Ottawa.

Morse, Eric W. "Summer Travel in the Canadian Barrens." This veteran canoeist has paddled most of the major rivers in the territories, and he brings the wealth of

his experiences to this account. Royal Canadian Geographical Society, Ottawa.

Nickerson, E. B. "Kayaks to the Arctic". Paddling the Mackenzie River. McClelland & Stewart, 1979.

Patterson, R. M. "The Dangerous River." The author, one of the finest wilderness writers, describes his travels in the Nahanni area of Canada's Northwest Territories. Gray's Publishing Ltd., 1966.

Turner, Dick. "Nahanni." An account of the North by a man who has lived there. Hancock House, 1975.

NOTE: *The journals of the Northern explorers are recommended reading for anyone planning a canoe trip in the Northwest Territories.*

The Land

Berger, Thomas R. "Northern Frontier: Northern Homeland." Report of the Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Inquiry, Vol. 1, 1977.

Bruemmer, Fred. "Seasons of the Eskimo." McClelland & Stewart, 1971 (paperback published in 1978).

Bruemmer, Fred. "The Arctic," Infocor, 1974.

Bruemmer, Fred. "The Long Hunt." The author's stirring account in words and photographs of the changing tradi-

tion of hunting in the Canadian North. Ryerson Press, 1969.

Buerschaper, Peter. "Arctic Journey: Painting, Sketches and Reminiscences of a Vanishing World." The author visited the High Arctic to paint and sketch various animals and birds in their natural habitat to capture the untamed beauty of the wilderness. 1977.

Canadian Arctic Producers Ltd. "We Don't Live in Snow Houses Now. Reflections of Arctic Bay." 1976.

Hodge, Robert P. "Amphibians & Reptiles in Alaska, The Yukon & Northwest Territories." Alaska Northwest, 1976.

Kurelek, William. "The Last of the Arctic." McGraw Hill-Ryerson, 1976.

Porsild, A. E. "Illustrated Flora of the Canadian Arctic Archipelago." National Museums of Canada, 1973.

Price, Ray. "Yellowknife." Ray Price uses his talents as a story-teller to give this interesting and readable history of Yellowknife. Toronto, Peter Martin Associates Ltd., 1967.

Snyder, L. L. "Arctic Birds of Canada." University of Toronto Press, 1957.

Stonehouse, Bernard. "Animals of the Arctic." The photographs testify the animals of the Arctic are fascinating and the environment dramatically beautiful. Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1972.

Sutton, George M. "High Arctic: an Expedition to the Unspoiled North." Birds and animals in the Bathurst Island area. Ericksson, 1971.

Watt, Frederick. "Great Bear." The staking rush of 1932. Outcrop, 1980.

Wilson, Roger. "The Land That Never Melts, Auyuittuq National Park." Recommended if you plan a trip to this Arctic park on Baffin Island. Peter Martin Associates Ltd., 1976.

(The Canadian Wildlife Service has a wide variety of pamphlets and other materials on wildlife. Write: Place Vincent Massey, Hull, Quebec.)

The People

Baker, Peter. "Memoirs of an Arctic Arab." The story of a free-trader in northern Canada, Yellowknife Publishing, 1976.

Briggs, Jean L. "Never in Anger." Harvard University Press, 1970.

Bruemmer, Fred. "Children of the North." Optimum, 1979.

Green, Jim. "Northbook." A collection of poetry written while the author lived on the Arctic coast. Blackfish Press, 1975.

Houston, James. "Frozen Fire, a Tale of Courage." A gripping adventure story



Travellers along the Mackenzie Highway encounter both modern and traditional ways of life such as this scene at Rae.

that appeals to children, about two boys who carry out a daring Arctic rescue. 1977.

Houston, James. "Spirit Wrestler." McClelland & Stewart, 1979.

Lee, Betty. "Lutiapik." McClelland and Stewart, 1975.

Lyall, Ernie. "An Arctic Man: Sixty Five Years in Canada's North." Hurtig, 1979.

Metayer, Maurice. "Tales from the Igloo." Hurtig, 1972.

Metis Association of NWT. "Our Metis Heritage — A Portrayal." A stirring account in words and pictures taken from family albums of many northern Metis families, showing the role Metis people have played in the north. Edited by Joanne Berger and Al Clovis. 1976.

North, Dick. "The Mad Trapper of Rat River." The true story of Albert Johnson, buried in Aklavik, Macmillan, 1972.

Nuligak. "I, Nuligak." Peter Martin Associates, 1966.

"Stories from Pangnirtung." Illustrations by Inuk artist Germaine Arnaktauyok. Hurtig, 1975.

Pitseolak, Peter. "People from our Side." Autobiography of first Inuit photographer from Cape Dorset. Hurtig, 1975.

Pitseolak, Peter. "Peter Pitseolak's Escape from Death." The renowned Inuk artist has spun a gripping tale of two walrus hunters lost at sea. 1977.

Pryde, Duncan. "Nunaga. My Land, My Country." Adventure biography of the author's life among the Inuit. Hurtig, 1971.

Schwartz, H. T. "Tales from the Smokehouse." Hurtig, 1976.

Sissons, Mr. Justice John Howard. "Judge of the Far North." Autobiography

of an amazing man. McClelland and Stewart, 1968.

Tetso, John. "Trapping is My Life." Peter Martin Associates, 1970.

The History

Crowe, Keith J. "A History of the Original Peoples of Northern Canada." Published by the Arctic Institute of North America. (McGill-Queen's University Press) 1974.

Ellis, Frank H. "Canada's Flying Heritage." A tribute to Canadian aviation and to long-time pilots who flew "by guess and by God." Includes reports on northern flying. University of Toronto Press. Revised, 1968.

Farrar, F. S. "Arctic Assignment — the Story of the St. Roch." MacMillan, 1974.

Fumoleau, Fr. Rene, o.m.i. "As Long As This Land Shall Last." McClelland and Stewart, 1975.

Goetz, Helga. "The Inuit Print." Exhibition Catalogue, National Museums of Canada, Ottawa, 1977.

Mackenzie, Alexander. "Voyages from Montreal to the Frozen and Pacific Oceans in the Years 1789 and 1793." A precise reproduction of one of the most remarkable and historically important journals of early North American exploration. C. E. Tuttle.

McGrath, Judy W. "Dyes from Lichens and Plants." Using the hardy lichens and plants that grow in the Spence Bay area, the author along with local Inuit women, has developed a range of hues and colours used in making garments, arts and crafts. 1977.

McKinlay, William Laird. "Karluk, The Great Untold Story of Arctic Ex-

ploration." Weidenfeld and Nicolson, 1976.

Rasky, Frank. "The Polar Voyagers: Explorers of the North." McGraw-Hill-Ryerson, 1976.

Swinton, George. "Sculpture of the Eskimo." McClelland and Stewart, 1972.

Turner, Dick. "Wings of the North." Hancock House.

Zaslow, M. "The Opening of the Canadian North, 1870-1914." Arctic History Press, 1979.

N.W.T. Public Library Services

Tourists are welcome to use the library facilities in the territories. Books may be borrowed on payment of a \$5 deposit per book. The deposit is refunded when the book is returned. N.W.T. Public Library Services headquarters are in Hay River, Box 1100, Hay River, N.W.T. X0E 1G0.

Communities where libraries are located include:

Aklavik, Baker Lake, Cambridge Bay, Cape Dorset, Coppermine, Eskimo Point, Fort McPherson, Fort Norman, Fort Resolution, Fort Simpson, Fort Smith, Frobisher Bay, Hay River, Igloolik, Inuvik, Nanisivik, Norman Wells, Pangnirtung, Pine Point, Rankin Inlet, Spence Bay, Tuktoyaktuk and Yellowknife.

Government Publications

Both federal and N.W.T. governments publish a wide range of books and pamphlets on Canada's North.

The Canadian government **Department of Supply and Services** handles the publication and distribution of all govern-

ment books. It publishes a quarterly catalogue of titles, called Selected Titles, and an annual index entitled Canadian Government Publications. To order, write Publishing Centre, Printing and Publishing, Supply and Services Canada, Ottawa, Ont. K1A 0S9. Telex 053-3703.

The **Government of the Northwest Territories** publishes an annual Publications Catalogue, a complete guide to the pamphlets, books and other printed materials from the government. Available free from Chief of Publications and Production, Department of Information, Box 1320, Yellowknife, N.W.T. X1A 2L9.

Northwest Territories Commissioner, "Report of the Commissioner of the Northwest Territories." Lavishly illustrated with quality color photographs, giving a comprehensive view of the Northwest Territories. Published annually by the Department of Information, Yellowknife.

Northern Newspapers, Periodicals

Fort Smith: Slave River Journal, Box 1108.

Frobisher Bay: Nunatsiak News, Box 8.

Hay River: The Hub, Box 1250 and Tapwe, Box 130.

Inuvik: The Drum, Box 2660

Ottawa: Inuit Today, 176 Gloucester St.

Pine Point: Pine Pointer, Box 288.

Yellowknife: Native Press, Box 1992; News of the North, Box 2820; Arctic in Colour, Box 2820; Yellowknifer, Box 2820.

Note: Southern daily newspapers available in Fort Smith, Hay River, Yellowknife, Inuvik and Frobisher Bay, Norman Wells, Ft. Providence.



Yes!

I need more information for my holiday in the Northwest Territories.

I am interested in commercial brochures for _____

_____ *(please specify the lodge, outfitter, package tour you wish to use)*

Other necessary information I need: _____

Name: _____

Address: _____

_____ Postal/Zip Code _____

For More Information

flip to page 48

for brochures on
the lodges, outfitters,
tours and other operators
in the Explorer's Guide.



TravelArctic

Government of the
Northwest Territories
Yellowknife, N.W.T.
Canada X1A 2L9.



For More Information

flip to page 48
for brochures on
the lodges, outfitters,
tours and other operators
in the Explorer's Guide.



so much to go for

The Northwest Territories

Frontier country: thousands of lakes, river routes, hiking trails and waterfalls. The Territories offer outdoor adventures away from crowds, noise, traffic. And you can combine plenty of other exciting experiences on your way north. Our Canada West partners offer everything from big city nightlife to rodeos and panning for Klondike gold.

It's all here in the best west; Canada West.



Yukon

There is only one travel experience like Yukon — a rich blend of Klondike Gold Rush history in a setting so breathtakingly scenic, you will return again and again! Come discover one of the world's last great wilderness frontiers. Fill your days with excitement and your camera with memories.

For more information: Yukon Department of Tourism and Information, Box 2703, Whitehorse, Yukon, Y1A 2C6.



British Columbia

You name it, and you can do it in Super, Natural British Columbia. Sail the Pacific coastline, fish for salmon or trout, scuba dive off the Sunshine Coast, ski or climb glaciers or mountains close to downtown Vancouver, enjoy cosmopolitan cities, or fly into the remote northern wilderness.

For more information: Tourism British Columbia, 1117 Wharf Street, Victoria, B.C., V8W 2Z2.

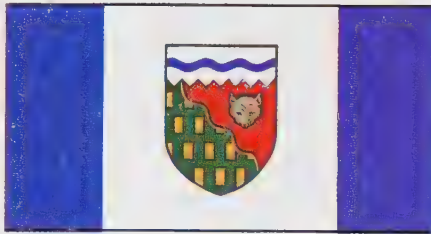


Alberta

Travel Alberta this year. From the exciting pace of Canada's fastest-growing cities across the plains to the grandeur of Alberta's Canadian Rockies. Packed inside one of Canada's most varied landscapes you will find a wealth of vacation opportunities, from trail-riding to fly-in fishing to guest ranches and country vacations.

For more information: Travel Alberta, P.O. Box 2500, Edmonton, Alberta, T5J 2Z4





FLAG

The design of the flag was adopted by the Council of the Northwest Territories as the official flag in January, 1969. The blue panels at either side of the flag represent the lakes and waters of the Northwest Territories. The white centre panel, equal in width to the two blue panels combined, symbolizes the ice and snow of the North.



CREST

The Armorial Bearings of the Northwest Territories were approved by Her Majesty Queen Elizabeth II on February 17, 1957. The crest consists of two gold narwhals guarding a compass rose, symbolic of the magnetic north pole. The white upper third of the shield represents the polar ice pack and is crossed by a wavy blue line portraying the Northwest Passage. The tree line is reflected by the diagonal line separating the red and green segments of the lower portion of the shield. The green symbolizes the forested areas south of the tree line while the red stands for the barren lands north of it. The important bases of northern wealth, minerals and fur, are represented by gold billets in the green portion and the mask of a white fox in the red.



FLORAL EMBLEM

The Council of the Northwest Territories, when it enacted the Floral Emblem Ordinance in June, 1957, established the mountain avens as the official floral emblem of the Northwest Territories.

The mountain avens, *Dryas integrifolia*, typically has narrow basal leaves and supports a single white and yellow flower on a short stem. This member of the rose family grows abundantly in the Eastern and Central Arctic regions of Canada as well as in parts of the Mackenzie region. It is not found in densely wooded country but it does occur wherever the country is open and well-drained, especially on high or rocky ground.



TARTAN

The official tartan of the Northwest Territories was unveiled at the 48th Session of the Council of the Northwest Territories in January, 1973. The tartan is in the traditional design with colors of green and brown and shades of red. It was designed by Mrs. Janet Anderson-Thomson of Yellowknife.

Cover Photo

A fisherman takes advantage of the Midnight Sun on one of the many spectacular lakes in the Western Arctic. (photo by Dave Engergretson)

OMINGMAK

The Muskox Le boeuf musqué



NATIONAL MUSEUM OF
NATURAL SCIENCES

National Museums of Canada

MUSEE NATIONAL DES
SCIENCES NATURELLES

Musées nationaux du Canada

BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY

04187

POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM

Polar Bear Pass
Le passage Polar Bear



BATHURST ISLAND
L'ÎLE BATHURST

Present range of Muskoxen
Aire actuelle des
boeufs musques

10

INTRODUCTION

Omingmak is an Inuit word for muskox which means "the animal with skin like a beard". Like the arctic environment itself, the muskox is of growing interest and importance to the people of Canada. Though most of us will never meet Omingmak on his home ground, we can learn about this shaggy symbol of the north and work to ensure suitable protection for both Omingmak and his homelands as the

development of the north proceeds.

Through 10 years of study of the behaviour of the muskox at the National Museum of Natural Sciences' Research Station at Polar Bear Pass, museum scientists have uncovered many fascinating details of the daily lives of muskoxen. Study techniques including direct observation, aerial surveys, and tagging have yielded much hitherto unknown information about the muskox way of life.

INTRODUCTION

Omingmak est un mot inuit qui désigne le boeuf musqué et signifie «l'animal dont la peau ressemble à une barbe». Tout comme l'environnement du Nord, le boeuf musqué suscite de plus en plus l'intérêt des Canadiens et revêt pour eux une importance croissante. La plupart d'entre nous n'auront jamais l'occasion d'observer Omingmak dans son habitat naturel, mais nous pouvons faire la connaissance de ce symbole hirsute du Nord et veiller à ce

qu'Omingmak et son habitat jouissent d'une protection convenable face au développement qui se poursuit dans le Nord.

Grâce à dix années d'études sur le comportement du boeuf musqué à la station de recherche du Musée national des sciences naturelles au défilé Polar Bear les scientifiques du Musée ont découvert de nombreux aspects fascinants de la vie quotidienne de cet animal. Les techniques d'étude, y compris l'observation directe, des recensements aériens et l'étiquetage ont permis d'apprendre beaucoup du boeuf musqué.

WHAT IS A MUSKOX?

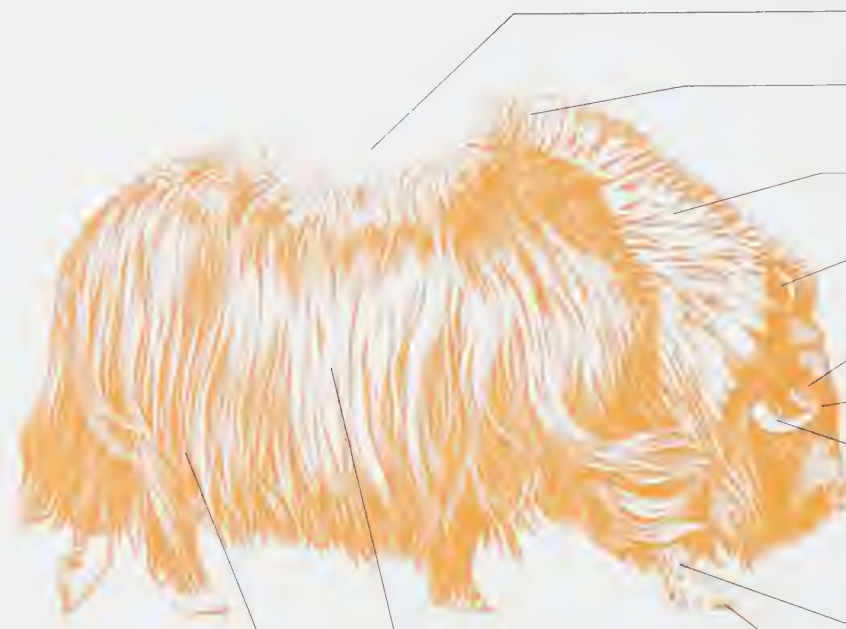
The muskox is a mammal belonging to the family Bovidae, the group of horned ungulates which includes cattle, antelopes, sheep and goats. Although the muskox superficially resembles

the bison, it is even more closely related to the sheep and goats. The scientific name, *Ovibos moschatus*, (meaning "musky sheep-ox"), reflects the past uncertainty among zoologists as to its classification.

QU'EST-CE QU'UN BOEUF MUSQUÉ?

Le boeuf musqué est un mammifère appartenant à la famille des bovidés, groupe des ongulés cornus qui comprend les bovins, l'antilope, le mouton et la chèvre. Bien que le boeuf musqué ressemble superficiellement au

bison, il est plus proche parent du mouton et de la chèvre. Son nom scientifique, *Ovibos moschatus* (qui signifie «mouton – boeuf musqué»), reflète l'incertitude qui avait cours autrefois parmi les zoologistes quant à sa véritable place dans la classification.



Udder Relatively small, with 4 teats, protected by wool

Pis Relativement petit, a quatre tétines, protégé par la laine

Coat Outer layer of long black guard-hairs with thick inner coat of soft, fine wool, provides protection against the worst arctic blizzards.

Manteau Couche extérieure de longs poils noirs et couche intérieure épaisse de fine laine souple; protège des pires poudrées de l'Arctique.

Saddle Area of shorter hair where lighter-coloured wool shows through.

Selle Zone où le poil plus court laisse voir la laine de couleur claire.

Hump Extension of bones of the neck and back for attachment of muscles which support the head and neck.

Bosse Proéminence des os du cou et du dos où se rattachent les muscles qui supportent la tête et le cou.

Mane Especially shaggy in bulls.

Crinière Particulièrement touffue chez les mâles.

Ears Well-muffled against the cold.

Oreille Bien emmitoufflée contre le froid.

Eye Adapted to both the low-light levels of the arctic winter and the glare of the summer sun.

Oeil S'adapte aussi bien à la pénombre de l'hiver arctique qu'à l'éclat du soleil estival.

Preorbital Gland Small pear-shaped gland which produces a secretion when rubbed against the forehead in times of stress.

Glande préorbitale Petite glande piriforme qui produit une sécrétion quand l'animal inquiet se frotte contre sa patte antérieure.

Horns Weapons against predators and also for fighting between males.

Corne Arme pour se défendre contre les prédateurs et aussi pour combattre les autres mâles.

Nose & Muzzle Covered with hair right to the edges of the nostrils and lips.

Nez et museau Couverts de poils jusqu'au bord des narines et des lèvres.

Legs Relatively short and covered with fine whitish wool.

Pattes Relativement courtes et couvertes d'une fine laine blanchâtre.

Hooves Split, rounded, equipped with dewclaws (vestigial toes) and soft pads, well-suited for climbing; front hooves larger for digging in snow.

Sabots Fendus, arrondis, munis d'ergots (vestige d'orteils) et de coussinets souples, adaptés à l'escalade; les sabots antérieurs sont plus gros pour mieux creuser la neige.

THE MUSKOX HERD

Muskoxen live in herds of less than a dozen in summer, and may band together into larger groups of 60 or more in winter. A muskox herd is a loosely organized social grouping, continuously changing in size, as it splits or joins up with other herds. Herds usually include both bulls and cows, as well as sub-adults of different ages.

Muskoxen are continuously on the move. During feeding periods, constant movement prevents overgraz-

Within each herd there is a social order based on age-sex classes (i.e. adult cows dominate sub-adult males at feeding sites) and a dominance hierarchy within a class. One adult male, the lead bull, is dominant over all.

Muskoxen have an activity cycle featuring alternating periods of feeding and periods of rumination (chewing of the cud) and rest. Herd members are synchronized in these activities.

ing. Herds travel about 50 km in a month's wanderings.

LE TROUPEAU DE BOEUF MUSQUES

En été, les boeufs musqués vivent en troupes de moins de 12 têtes et, en hiver, ils peuvent se réunir en groupes plus importants de 60 individus ou plus. Le troupeau de boeufs musqués est un groupement social sans organisation stricte qui change continuellement de taille, soit qu'il se divise, soit qu'il se joigne à d'autres hardes. Il comprend habituellement des mâles et des femelles, ainsi que des jeunes de tous âges.

Les boeufs musqués se déplacent sans cesse. Pendant les périodes où ils s'alimentent, le déplacement con-

Au sein de chaque troupeau, il existe un ordre social fondé sur les classes d'âge et de sexe (par ex., les femelles adultes dominent les mâles juvéniles dans les aires où les animaux se nourrissent) et un ordre hiérarchique au sein d'une même classe. Un mâle adulte domine tous les autres membres de la harde.

Les boeufs musqués ont un cycle d'activité où alternent des périodes d'alimentation et des périodes de rumination et de repos. Ces activités ont toutes lieu en même temps chez tous les membres du troupeau.

tinuel empêche le surpâturage. Les hardes parcourent environ 50 km par mois.



THE DEFENCE FORMATION

When confronted with danger from wolves, low-flying aircraft, or hunters, muskoxen form a characteristic defence formation. The herd members line up side-by-side facing their attackers, with their rumps pressed tightly together and the calves wedged safely in between the adults (A). If surrounded, they form a solid ring from

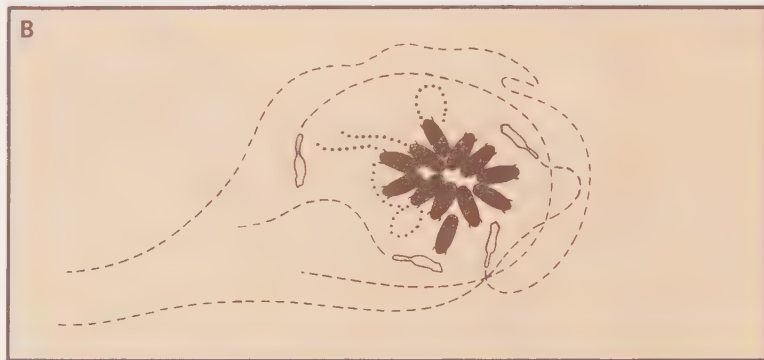
which the adults break out to charge the enemy (B).

When harassed, the herd may abandon its defence formation and stampede. Sometimes, in the rush to escape a circling helicopter or an approaching vehicle, calves or weaker members of the group may be abandoned or injured. In late winter, the survival of the muskoxen may be seriously affected when they are driven into areas where food is scarce.

LA FORMATION DEFENSIVE

En présence d'un danger, par exemple d'une bande de loups, d'un avion volant à basse altitude ou de chasseurs, les boeufs musqués adoptent une formation de défense caractéristique. Les membres du troupeau s'alignent pour faire face aux attaquants, rapprochent leurs croupes et mettent les jeunes à l'abri, étroitement serrés entre les adultes (A). Lorsqu'ils se voient cernés, ils forment un cercle très serré à partir duquel les adultes chargent l'ennemi (B).

Harcelé, le troupeau peut rompre sa formation défensive et s'enfuir à la débandade. Parfois, dans la ruée des bêtes fuyant un hélicoptère qui tourne en rond ou un véhicule qui s'approche sur le terrain, il peut arriver que des veaux ou des individus faibles soient abandonnés ou blessés. Vers la fin de l'hiver, la survie des boeufs musqués peut également être sérieusement compromise lorsque ceux-ci sont chassés vers des régions où la nourriture est peu abondante.





A herd in defence formation is not always well-organized. Often it is a shuffling mass of bodies, with individuals randomly charging the attackers.

Lorsqu'elle adopte sa formation défensive, la harde n'est pas toujours bien organisée. Souvent, elle n'est qu'une masse de corps entremêlés, certains individus chargent au hasard les attaquants.

Wolves are successful at killing muskoxen if they can pull down a straggler or surprise a herd before it groups together.

Les loups réussissent à tuer des boeufs musqués seulement s'ils peuvent abattre un trainard ou surprendre la harde avant qu'elle ne se regroupe.



CALVING TIME

Muskox calves are born between April and June when the land may still be in the icy grip of winter. Cow muskoxen can produce a single calf each year, though in some areas several years may go by with no calves being born.

The calf is able to stand within minutes of birth and can follow its mother and the herd within a

few hours. The calves soon begin feeding on plants, though suckling may continue throughout the first year. For newborn calves suckling lasts about 5 minutes, but by summer's end the drinking bouts are down to 30 seconds and the mothers become quite intolerant. The playful calves spend a lot of time together even when very young and only return to their mothers for suckling or to seek safety.



LA SAISON DE MISE BAS

Les petits viennent au monde entre avril et juin, parfois alors que l'hiver règne encore. La femelle peut donner naissance à un veau unique chaque année, bien que, dans certains régions, il puisse s'écouler plusieurs années sans aucune naissance.

Le nouveau-né se dresse sur ses pattes quelques minutes après sa naissance et suit sa mère et le reste du troupeau quelques heures plus tard. Les veaux commencent très tôt à se nourrir de plantes, mais il peut arriver qu'ils continuent à téter jusqu'à l'âge

d'un an. Chez les nouveaux-nés, la tétée dure environ 5 minutes, mais vers la fin de l'été, elle n'est plus que de 30 secondes et la mère devient très intolérante. Même très jeunes, les veaux enjoués passent beaucoup de temps ensemble et ne reviennent à leur mère que pour téter ou se mettre en sûreté.

While adults are busy feeding or ruminating, the calves band together and engage in playful but vigorous butting contests or gallop madly around the herd.

Tandis que les adultes sont occupés à se nourrir ou à ruminer, les veaux se rassemblent et s'amuse à se heurter vigoureusement de la tête ou galopent follement autour du troupeau.



Muskoxen become shaggy and ragged-looking in mid summer as the soft grayish underwool works its way out through the dark guard hairs of the outer coat.

Au milieu de l'été, la laine grisâtre de la toison intérieure se fraie un chemin à travers les poils protecteurs sombres de la toison extérieure, ce qui donne aux animaux une apparence hirsute et broussailleuse.



Three-month old calf.

Veau de trois mois.

THE BREEDING SEASON

In late July, bulls show an increased interest in the cows. But before mating, they must engage in prolonged courtship behaviour. The earliest behaviour patterns help the bull assess a cow's reproductive state. The later patterns feature more body contact. If the cow stands while the bull touches her with his head or foreleg, then

The arrows in this diagram show the major sequences of behaviour during the courtship activities of a dominant bull for a 5-week period. In 300 hours of observation, he made 1,300 advances towards the 6 cows in his herd, but mated only 5 times.

Les flèches de ce diagramme indiquent la séquence des principales activités caractéristiques du comportement pendant le rituel amoureux d'un taureau dominant durant une période de cinq semaines. En 300 heures d'observation, il a fait 1,300 avances à six femelles de sa harde, mais il ne s'est accouplé que cinq fois.

she is probably receptive to mating and will allow the bull to mount. If the cow shuns his preliminary advances, he must repeat the initial behaviours until she is more receptive.

Sequences shown by wide arrows happened more often than those shown by thin arrows.

LA SAISON DES ACCOUPLEMENTS

A la fin de juillet, les mâles montrent plus d'intérêt pour les femelles. Mais avant

Les séquences indiquées par des flèches larges ont été plus fréquentes que celles indiquées par des flèches minces.



l'accouplement, ils doivent entreprendre une cour prolongée. Les premiers comportements caractéristiques permettent aux mâles de se rendre compte si la femelle est prête à s'accoupler. Les comportements ultérieurs présentent un plus grand nombre de contacts corporels. Si la femelle laisse le mâle la toucher avec sa tête ou sa patte antérieure, elle est alors probablement prête à l'accouplement et permettra au mâle de la monter. Si la femelle se dérobe à ces avances préliminaires, le mâle doit alors répéter le rituel depuis le début jusqu'à ce qu'elle devienne réceptive.

1. Approach

2. Chase

3. Sniff

4. Nose

5. Lip-curl

6. Follow

7. Rush

8. Alongside

9. Head on rump

10. Kick

11. Up on hind legs

12. Mount

1. Le mâle s'approche

2. Il poursuit

3. Il renifle

4. Il place le nez

5. Il retrouse les lèvres

6. Il suit

7. Il se précipite

8. Il frôle le flanc

9. Il se met la tête sur la croupe

10. Il donne un coup de la patte antérieure

11. Il se dresse sur les pattes postérieures

12. Il monte

During the rut, bulls may challenge the dominant male for possession of the herd through ritualized displays or actual fighting. Following an exchange of deep rumbling bellows, the opponents walk together slowly and stiffly, displaying their horns and rubbing their pre-orbital glands (1). Then, swinging their heads from side-to-side, they back away for as much as 50 metres (2) before galloping forward (3). The charging bulls clash head-on with a resounding crack (4) and may repeat the action a dozen times. If the outcome is still uncertain, the bulls engage in a rough head-to-head scuffle (5). Pushing and jabbing with the horns may now decide the winner.

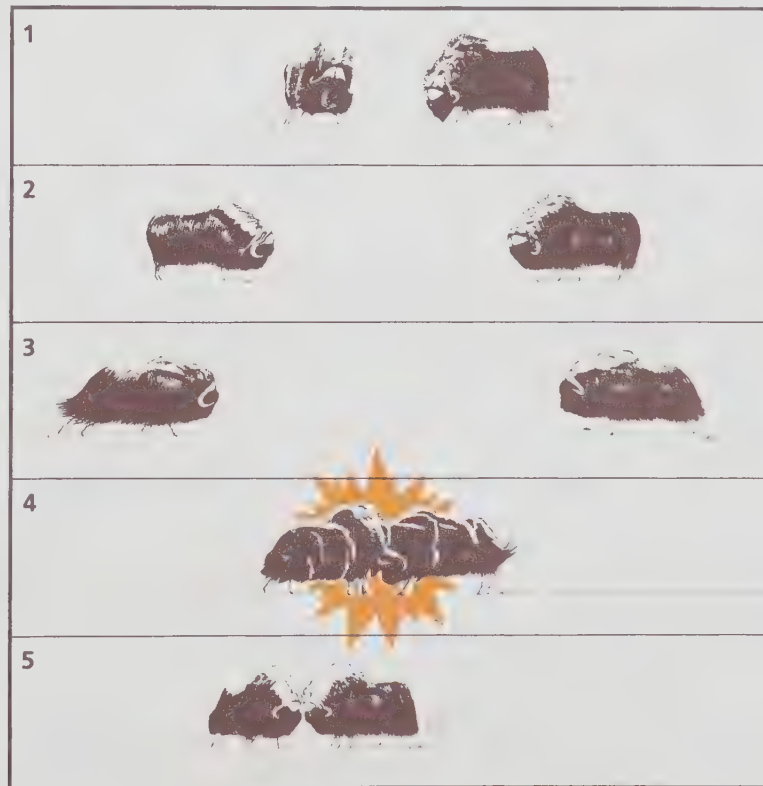
To the winner goes the harem. The loser may submit and join the herd or hang about

on the fringes waiting for another chance to do battle. Some defeated bulls wander the tundra alone or join small groups of other males.

Durant le rut, les mâles peuvent défier le mâle dominant pour la possession de la harde par des parades rituelles ou de véritables combats. Après un

échange de meuglements graves, les rivaux se mettent à marcher avec lenteur et raideur, en montrant leurs cornes et en frottant leurs glandes préorbitales (1). Puis, se balançant la tête d'un côté à l'autre, ils reculent, sur une distance pouvant atteindre 50 mètres (2), avant de charger au galop (3). Lancés à toute allure, ils se heurtent la tête dans un craquement sonore (4) et peuvent répéter ce geste une douzaine de fois. Si l'issue du conflit est encore incertaine, les mâles se mettent à se bousculer rudement, tête contre tête (5). Les poussées et les coups de cornes peuvent alors déterminer le vainqueur.

Le vainqueur remporte le «harem». Le perdant peut se soumettre et s'intégrer à la harde ou rôder autour en attendant une autre occasion de livrer bataille. Certains des mâles défaits peuvent errer seuls dans la toundra ou se joindre à de petits groupes de mâles.



SURVIVING THE WINTER

Muskoxen do not escape winter by migrating, but live in the same area year-round. The biggest problem for the wool-clad muskox in winter is not the extreme cold, but finding enough food. They must dig craters in the shallow snow to reach their winter forage of dried vegetation. The dominant herd members displace those of lesser rank from these feeding craters. When the wind-hardened crust is thick, making pawing difficult, the muskoxen pound through it with their chins. When high winds and blowing snow make feeding difficult, they simply lie down until the storm passes.

Late winter is the critical time

for survival. Any combination of old age, worn teeth, or poor range and weather conditions may lead to death by starvation. When adverse weather coincides with extensive human activity muskox populations may face disaster.

Muskox teeth are continually worn by the grinding of food. In a young animal (A) all the teeth are functional, but in an old muskox the oldest teeth are worn and broken (B).



LA SURVIE EN HIVER

Les boeufs musqués n'émigrent pas pour échapper à l'hiver, mais habitent la même région toute l'année. Grâce à sa laine, le boeuf musqué supporte habituellement bien le froid intense

Les dents du boeuf musqué s'usent continuellement à broyer les aliments. Chez le jeune animal (A), les dents sont encore toutes fonctionnelles, mais les dents s'usent et se brisent chez les individus âgés (B).

de l'Arctique polaire, mais trouve difficilement de quoi se nourrir convenablement en cette saison. Il doit creuser des trous dans la neige peu profonde de la toundra pour trouver son fourrage d'hiver, fait de végétation séchée. Les membres dominants de la harde éloignent leurs congénères de rang inférieur de ces cratères d'alimentation. Lorsque la couche de neige durcie par le vent est épaisse et rend la fouille de la neige difficile, les boeufs musqués la percent à coups de menton. Si les grands vents et les rafales de neige rendent le brouillage difficile, les boeufs musqués se couchent tout simplement pour attendre la fin de la tempête.

La fin de l'hiver est une période critique pour le boeuf musqué. L'animal risque de mourir de faim s'il est vieux, si ses dents sont usées, si son habitat est peu propice ou encore si les conditions météorologiques sont mauvaises. Lorsque des conditions défavorables coïncident avec une activité humaine importante, les populations de boeufs musqués sont guettées par la catastrophe.

A September snowstorm in 1973 brought death to half of the muskoxen of Bathurst Island. The wet snow froze, forming a cement-like layer which prevented the muskoxen from reaching food.

En septembre 1973, une tempête de neige a entraîné la mort de la moitié des boeufs musqués de l'île Bathurst.

La neige mouillée a gelé et formé une couche dure comme du ciment, qui les a empêchés d'atteindre leur nourriture.



SANCTUARY

The coming of explorers, fur-traders and whalers almost spelled extinction for Omingmak. Because of their excessive slaughter of muskoxen for meat and hides, hunting was banned in 1917. Muskoxen were protected further with the establishment of the Thelon Game Sanctuary in 1927. Slowly the populations recovered to the point where limited hunting by Inuit is now permitted.

But all is not well with Omingmak. On some arctic islands the muskox's reproductive success has been low and their numbers have fallen drastically. Despite the fact that the legal annual quota for muskox is now 250, there is still increasing pressure for more hunting. The security of the muskox is being steadily

eroded by exploration and development schemes. If the Thelon Game Sanctuary is opened to mining interests, there will be no place in all of Canada's north where muskoxen and their habitat are fully protected. Even Polar Bear Pass, which was proposed as an ecological reserve in 1975, still has no permanent protection.

We Canadians have a unique responsibility to Omingmak and his homeland. If you are concerned about Omingmak's survival, the following government departments would be interested in hearing from you:

Department of Indian and Northern Affairs, Ottawa.

Canadian Wildlife Service, Environment Canada, Ottawa.

Fish and Wildlife Service, Government of the Northwest Territories, Yellowknife.

AIRES DE REFUGE

La venue des explorateurs, des commerçants de fourrure et des pêcheurs de baleines a failli provoquer l'extinction d'Omingmak par la chasse excessive qu'ils en ont faite pour sa viande et pour la confection de couvertures. La tuerie a mené à l'interdiction de la chasse au boeuf musqué en 1917. L'espèce s'est vu accorder une plus grande protection grâce à la création du refuge faunique de Thelon en 1927. Les populations décimées se sont lentement reconstituées, au point que les Inuit sont maintenant autorisés à en chasser un certain nombre.

Mais tout ne va pas pour le mieux dans le monde d'Omingmak. Dans certaines îles arctiques, la reproduction a subi un ralentissement et le nombre de boeufs musqués a diminué de façon dramatique. Le contingent légal de chasse est actuellement fixé à 250, mais les pressions continuent quand même à s'accroître en vue d'augmenter cette limite. La sécurité de boeuf

musqué est sans cesse menacée par les projets de prospection et d'exploitation. Si le refuge faunique de Thelon est ouvert aux intérêts miniers, il n'y aura pas dans tout le Nord canadien un seul endroit où les boeufs musqués et leur habitat pourront jouir d'une protection complète. Même le défilé Polar Bear, qui a été proposé comme réserve écologique en 1975, n'est pas encore protégé de façon permanente.

En tant que Canadiens, nous avons une très grande responsabilité envers Omingmak et son habitat. Si la survie d'Omingmak vous intéresse, adressez-vous aux ministères suivants:

Ministère des Affaires indiennes et du Nord, Ottawa.

Service canadien de la faune, Environnement Canada, Ottawa.

Service de la faune aquatique et terrestre, Gouvernement des Territoires du Nord-Ouest, Yellowknife.



Footloose in Yellowknife

A historical walking tour of Old Town



Yellowknife , Northwest Territories

04187

BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY

POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM



THIS walking tour takes in only Old Town, Yellowknife, shown on the map. For exercise enthusiasts, the route is a pleasant stroll in summertime and a brisk walk in winter. Less hardy types can travel by car when temperatures drop below freezing. If you do drive or ride a bicycle, read through the information before you go, since the tour is designed for a walking pace.

The tour takes about two hours on foot.

Whether by foot or on wheels, the route is simple. To start, follow Franklin Avenue down the hill to Old Town.

Information for *Footloose in Yellowknife*, courtesy of several long-time Yellowknife residents and the book *Yellowknife* by Ray Price, Peter Martin Associates Limited, 1967.



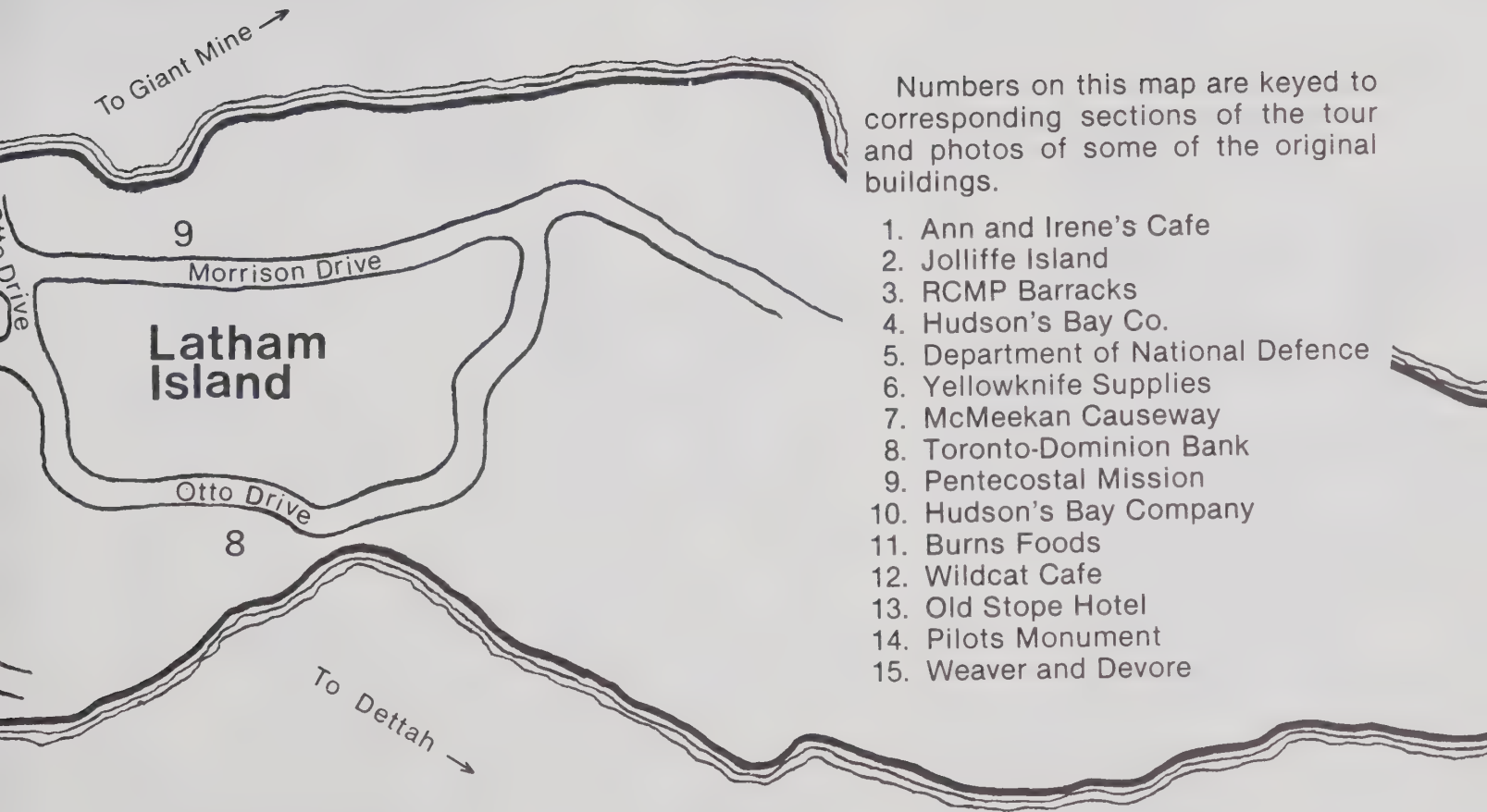
HISTORY has a special meaning for Yellowknife. The city is built on the oldest rock in the world, part of the gold-bearing Precambrian Shield. Native people have lived on the surrounding land for centuries. Yet, the recorded history of Yellowknife's origins begins very recently.

The boom town days date from 1934 to 1940. Old Town, Willow Flats and Latham Island were the original settlement areas, extending north into Yellowknife Bay.

Yellowknife appeared as a dot on the map during the depression years of the 1930s. Fortune hunters, explorers and prospectors zeroed in on this area to stake gold claims and open up service operations connected with the gold mining industry.

Aerial view shows Old Town, far left, and Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre under construction, left foreground.







Over the last 30 years, Yellowknife has grown to become the home of local and territorial governments, the regional offices of federal government, business offices, recreational facilities and modern residences.

To start your tour, walk down Franklin Avenue and at the end, veer right onto **McDonald Drive**. Most of the streets in Old Town recall the names of people who came to Yellowknife in the late 1930s. In those days, the city was no more than a shanty town. This road is named for Bill

Far left: In the early days, Tom Doornbos solved water delivery problems at 25 cents a pail.

Ann and Irene [1] with Vic Ingraham, proprietor of the Yellowknife Rooms and the Old Stope [13].

McDonald, a mining engineer, geologist and the main field man for the Consolidated Mining and Smelting Company, Cominco, when the company was developing newly staked gold claims.

1·2

ON THE left of the road once stood two popular grub spots in town. A reputation for excellent home cooking drew a regular crowd to **Ann & Irene's** tiny restaurant [1]. The **Lakeview Cafe**, run by Lil Bretzlaff, catered to a large clientele and offered a lookout over to **Joliffe Island** [2] in **Yellowknife Bay**, one of the northern extensions of Great Slave Lake. Dr. Jolliffe and a geological team arrived in 1935 to survey these surroundings and camped on the island. It was to become a favorite residential spot for prospectors and transients who populated the island with tents and



small huts. After the war, Imperial Oil located a tank farm on Jolliffe Island. Although it moved to a new location in the late '60s, the foundations of the storage tanks can still be identified.

The shoreline of Yellowknife Bay, skirting McDonald Drive, is jammed with wharves, cruise and boat rental docks. Since discovery days, this stretch of shore has been alive with the hubbub of float planes equipped with pontoons in summer and skis in winter. Boat taxis zipped through a water traffic obstacle course of everything from Great Slave Lake transport barges to rowboats. In winter, before an overland route existed, dog

A Yellowknife postcard of the late '40s pictured Old Town and Jolliffe Island complete with tank farm [2].

teams and a variety of vehicles crossed frozen Yellowknife Bay from mine sites to these shores in Old Town.

3

TOWERING on the left side of the road are the original foundations of Yellowknife, a solid mass of Precambrian rock. Part of the oldest rock shield in the world, it was sheared down to present dimensions by huge glaciers during the ice some 50,000 years ago.

Precariously balanced shacks and tents once showered down the sides of this rock, leaving hardly an inch of free space to build. Most of these buildings have since disappeared; only some foundations remain. Very little early Yellowknife architecture still stands. One such relic is the **First Anglican Rectory**, a log cabin built in this area and



recently moved to New Town. The original **Royal Canadian Mounted Police** (Quarters) [3] was situated at the road's curve.

4.5.6

SOME of the best stories about the early days in Yellowknife centre on the old staffhouses of two local stores. One of the **Hudson's Bay Staffhouses** [4] sits at the base of the rock on the left. On the right, you'll see the air search and rescue base of the **Department of National Defence** [5] and the government wharf. Barges from Hay River resupply Yellowknife each summer.

Following the curve of McDonald Drive, you eventually come to the site of the **Yellowknife Supplies** (Staffhouse and Store) [6], which once led a double life as the local post office, run by Art Umbach, the city's postmaster for over 25 years.

Now, continue on mainland or cross the causeway at your right to see a few sights on **Latham Island**. Be prepared to add 30 minutes to your walking time if you decide to take in the island.

7

LATHAM Island is named for Gordie Latham, a southern school teacher turned bush pilot and adventurer. **The McMeekan Causeway** [7] connects mainland to the former satellite island. Jock McKeekan, an outspoken journalist, lobbied for a bridge in his newspaper *The Yellowknife Blade* (once the only N.W.T. newspaper in a million square miles).

Before the bridge was built, one of the most profitable businesses around was Bertha Watt's water taxi service. Bertha's rowboat took passengers, for 5 cents a head, across

BANK OF TORONTO



the channel to the liquor outlet, government offices, and Eddie Jones' General Store. Often the ferry trip was a perilous voyage. Bush pilots used the channel as a runway, a hazard for the crew aboard Bertha's dinghy. More than once, a smash hit with a float plane tossed the hapless voyageurs overboard into the drink. Travel conditions between the two points improved in the '40s when the causeway was constructed.

Follow the road straight ahead after crossing the causeway. **Hearne Hill Road** joins **Otto Drive**. These roads are reminders of two 'Sams' in Yellowknife's past. Sir Samuel Hearne, a Hudson's Bay Company officer, explored the Great Slave Lake area in the 1770s guided by Matonabee, a Yellowknife Indian. Sam Otto was a prospector and overland traveller who lived in Yellowknife for many years.

8

TURN right on Otto Drive. You'll see a small log cabin on the right, the original **Toronto Dominion Bank** [8]. Like many of the older buildings on this route, it is now a private residence, relocated from its original site on the mainland.

Construction along Otto Drive has given rise to some unusual architecture, tailored to a rock landscape.

At **Morrison Drive**, turn left. To the right, Morrison leads to **Rainbow Valley**, so called for its multi-coloured row of houses.





Far left: Old Town, the action centre of Yellowknife in the early '40s.

Left: The Salmita Mines camp.

Above: The Hudson's Bay staff house still stands in Old Town.



9

CONTINUE along Morrison Drive until you reach a half-storey log cabin on the right [9]. It is one of the few remaining structures from Yellowknife's wilderness days. The cabin has had a colourful career over the years, including a stint as a chapel. Many weddings were held within its walls.

At one time this building served as the Pentecostal Mission [9].

10-11

FOLLOW Morrison Drive to the causeway. Cross over to Old Town and turn right. Bordering the left side of the road are several old **Hudson's Bay** buildings [10]. The store operated from this site until 1960 when modern facilities opened in New Town. Adjacent is the former **Burns Food Store** [11], which supplied meat and other products to the mines in the early days.

The next stop is at the corner of **Doornbos Lane**. Tom Doornbos is one of Yellowknife's legendary oldtimers. Always well known around town, Tom hauled water on a yoke across his shoulders to most of the cafes. Standard rates were about 25 cents a pail and 50 cents per trip. People still speculate whether Tom made a fortune in his day.



12

THE newly renovated **Wildcat Cafe** [12] sits at the corner of the road. Willy Wylie and Smokey Stout opened the cafe in 1937. Two years later the front addition, recently christened the **The Wild Kitten**,

The Wildcat Cafe in the '40s.

became Yellowknife's first ice cream emporium, serving cones, banana splits and sodas before the days of modern methods of mixing and refrigeration. The Wildcat, in season, offers home cooked meals, or coffee, a welcome respite on the *Footloose* tour.

Turn left to climb up Doornbos Lane. The view today from this spot is very different from the same scene in the '30s and '40s. The hillside was crammed with a jumble of buildings representing a large portion of the businesses in operation at the time.

Take the right hand fork of the road off this lane to **Racine Road**. This road once wound its way through a network of cafes and restaurants: **Ruth's Roving Hornet Cafe**, **The Busy Bee Cafe**, **The Squeeze In Cafe**, a pool hall, theatre, drugstore, taxi stands, **Joe's Barber Shop**, and some retail outlets.



13

INGRAHAM Drive runs above Racine Road, leading to the base of the steps to the **Pilot's Monument**. Vic Ingraham was an able and innovative man with a talent for getting things organized. He was especially astute when it came to the hotel and restaurant business. In spring, 1938, Vic laid the foundations for **Yellowknife Rooms**, located in the area in front of these steps. The following spring the first beer boat arrived and by that summer business was thriving, with beer available 24 hours a day, six days a week.

The Old Stope Hotel [13] is located right in the centre of this view taken over Latham Island in the mid-'60s.

Later, Vic built the Yellowknife Hotel across the way, just below Racine Road. The hotel boasted the best bar in town — **The Old Stope** [13]. Today, a group known as The Old Stope Association volunteers its efforts to renovating parts of Old Town.

In 1949, the building burned to the ground, Yellowknifers were not without their favorite haunt for long. The second Old Stope was built in a record time of 87 days. When it burned down again in 1968, the hotel was never reconstructed. You can still see the foundations and water boiler of Ingraham's famous Old Stope on the edge of the plateau overlooking the water.

14

CCLIMB the steps to the top of the rock, where you can visit **The Bush Pilot's Monument** [14] and see one of the best



views of the entire Yellowknife area at the same time. The monument is dedicated to the men who, along with miners and explorers, opened up the north to industry and exploration. Bush flying played a critical role in the development of the Yellowknife mining industry. It was once the only way to transport men, equipment and food to the areas where minerals were in rich supply. In summer, Yellowknife's air traffic on wheels and floats ranks among the highest in density in North America.

Gold first drew the miners north and gold is still mined in Yellowknife. From the Pilot's Monument, you can look out across **Back Bay** to **Giant Yellowknife Mines** on the far shore.

Bush planes at Yellowknife in the '40s.

Scanning the horizon, it is hard to miss the tallest structure in Yellowknife: the orange-topped **Cominco Mines** Headframe, the **Robertson Shaft**.

On the way down the hill to the Wildcat, you will pass another **Hudson's Bay Staff-house**. It now rests quietly on the corner of Ingraham Drive and Doornbos Lane. At the Wildcat, turn left onto **Wiley Road**. The stretch of road ahead was littered with stores including **Sam Kushner's General Store**: a chaotic jumble of dry goods where bartering was the chief means of transacting business. Eddie Arsenault ran a small jewelry store in this vicinity, selling rings and other trinkets made out of Yellowknife gold.

Float plane bases are found on the right along the shores of **Back Bay**, part of Yellowknife Bay which embraces the Old Town peninsula. Wander down to the float plane wharves to take a close look at the



15

different aircraft. The natural harbourage available on the east and west sides of mainland rock was a good reason to locate the townsite and transportation services here.

On the left side of the road, Gordie Latham and partner Pete Racine opened the first hotel in Yellowknife. At first, **The Corona Inn** was just a tent frame. Pilots, prospectors and a motley crew of passersby dropped in for the usual beans and the game meat of the day. Space was reserved on the floor for overnight guests. The Inn was never quiet in the years of gold staking. Alcohol supplies at the Corona rarely ran dry even though liquor was then available only for medicinal purposes. Two gallons of liquor or two barrels of beer per year was the ration.

AT THE end of Wiley Road, a sign advertising **Weaver & Devore** [15] general supplies and furs appears on an old log building. Harry Weaver and Bud Devore started a profitable general dry goods business years ago. It is still in operation in a new store across the street. The log building itself was one of the first constructed by Gordie Latham on Latham Island and was later moved to this spot to serve as a store. One of the first Christmas parties, remembered by many long-time Yellowknife residents, took place under its roof. The fact that the building still stands speaks well for its construction. Don't miss the early gas pump out front.

On the way back to New Town along Franklin, you will pass **Willow Flats**. Here, laundries, bootleggers and bawdy houses



were open for business in the early days. The bawdy houses consisted of a strip of shacks along a road called **Glamour Alley**, now called **Bretzlaff Drive**. The Glamour Alley gals entertained in this area until 1939. Word from the nation's capital forced them to discontinue business. Among the laundries which handled the wash load for the mines and the town was Eastie and May Clayton's

Left: Main street, Yellowknife, 1940s.

Next page: The Canadian Championship Dog Derby is run each March at Yellowknife on Great Slave Lake. The course takes teams past the original Negus Mine buildings.

in Willow Flats. No longer a laundry, the building stands on **Ragged Ass Road**, named for a group of prospectors who called themselves The Ragged Ass Syndicate.

Today the hub of Yellowknife business has moved up the hill to New Town. The Yellowknife Chamber of Commerce operates a summer tourist information centre in a renovated mine cabin next to City Hall. The Prince of Wales Northern Heritage Centre, opened in 1979 by Charles, Prince of Wales, is open to visitors. It features the heritage of Canada's Northwest Territories in displays of art and artifacts.

Now you know a little of our history, move from our past to our present, and enjoy some of the modern attractions of Yellowknife.



*Printed in the Northwest Territories by
CANARCTIC GRAPHICS LTD., Yellowknife.*

*Produced by Outcrop Ltd.
for the Yellowknife Convention
Bureau, August 1977. Re-issued August 1979.*

Yellowknife

CAPITAL OF THE
NORTHWEST TERRITORIES

BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY

04187

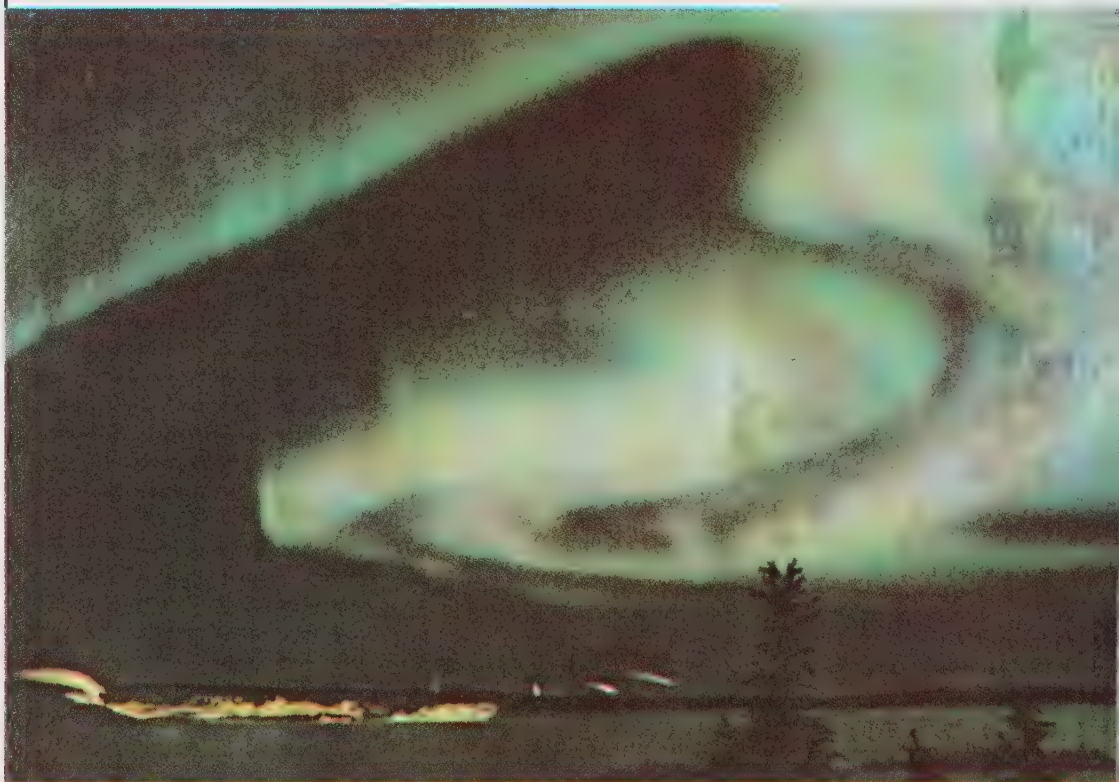
POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM

City Guide



N.W.T. Crest, symbolic of the north pole, the polar ice pack, the Northwest Passage, the tree line, the barren lands and the wealth of the North.



Yellowknife

capital of the
northwest territories



Yellowknife Crest, symbolic of the mining industry, Great Slave Lake, the Northern Lights, fishing, the Yellowknife Blade, the Raven, and the Midnight Sun.

City Guide



DIANE

Yellowknife from the air, looking north-east from New Town

Yellowknife

Yellowknife, the capital and largest centre of the Northwest Territories is located at $114^{\circ} 26'$ west longitude and $62^{\circ} 28'$ north latitude. This places the City about 960 km (600 miles) north of Edmonton by air and 440 km (275 miles) south of the Arctic Circle. By road it is 1524 km (947 miles) to Edmonton.

The City is on the west shore of Yellowknife Bay, on the north arm of the Great Slave Lake, in an area where permafrost remains in summer a few inches below moss or muskeg, and ten feet or more below the surface of sandy soils.

Yellowknife is located in an area that is typical of the Precambrian Shield. The topography is generally flat with many rock outcrops and small rocky hills occurring continuously throughout the area. The region is dotted with innumerable lakes, and much is covered with muskeg. Trees are small and predominantly spruce and pine, with birch and poplar stands found in valleys and on occasional sand plains.



R. Heming, Outcrop Ltd.

Yellowknife City Hall, opened August 1975.

Historical Background

The name Yellowknife first appeared in Samuel Hearne's journal of his travels from Churchill to the Arctic Coast for the Hudson's Bay Company in 1771. Hearne's sketch map recording his travels also provided the first record of Great Slave Lake. The tribe of Indians inhabiting the area were called Yellowknife Indians by Hearne because he found them using knives and utensils made of pure copper.

The leader of the natives who guided Hearne was a Yellowknife Indian named Matonabee. Compared to their neighbours, the Dogribs, the Yellowknife Indians were generally more tall and slenderly built, though strong and muscular. They frequently made raids upon bands of their Dogrib neighbours, stealing women and children whom they enslaved.



R. Heming, Outcrop Ltd

Frame Lake from the South

As a result of Sir Alexander Mackenzie's visit in 1789, a trading post known as Fort Providence was established near the mouth of Yellowknife Bay. This post was still in existence 31 years later, when Sir John Franklin made his journey to the Coppermine River in 1820, but was abandoned shortly afterwards.

Around 15 years after Franklin's contact with the Yellowknife Indians in 1820-21, the Dogribs tired of the aggressiveness of the Yellowknife Indians and turned on them in two successive series of raids, decimating their numbers and driving those not enslaved up to the East Arm of Great Slave Lake. Descendants of these tall natives are still found today around Snowdrift.

After Franklin and the subsequent explorations by his original companions, Richardson and Back, there was very little heard from the Yellowknife area. Fur traders conducted their business quietly, not wishing any interference in their dealings with the natives. This lasted until 1896 when prospectors on their way to the Klondike discovered gold in Yellowknife Bay. The find was not considered significant so the Yellowknife gold was ignored as the prospectors raced to the Yukon.



R. Heming, Outcrop Ltd.

Float Plane base, Old Town, Yellowknife.

Yellowknife might not exist today had pitchblende not been found at Great Bear Lake in 1930. This find led to the mining of radium ore from the Eldorado Mine, and increased prospecting activities throughout the area. Prospectors sent south from Great Bear Lake down the Yellowknife River found visible gold in the east shore of Yellowknife Bay at the mouth of the river in September 1934. Large numbers of claims were staked and by 1935 it was reported that the entire shoreline of Yellowknife Bay had been staked out to a depth of several miles.

In 1936 and 1937 the Consolidated Mining and Smelting Company of Canada began to sink a shaft on the "Con" claim and Bill Stewart on the "Negus" claim. Commercial gold production began in the Yellowknife district in September 1938 when a 72½ pound gold brick was poured at the Con Mine. The following year, when the Negus Mine came into production, 51914 ounces of gold with a value of \$1,876,-224 were produced. In the summer of 1953, the two major producing mines, Giant and Con, each poured their thousandth gold brick. The "special" was wrapped in bright red tissue instead of the usual white before being shipped out in the usual manner — by ordinary registered mail.



R. Heming, Outcrop Ltd.

Giant Mine.

Upon the outbreak of the Second World War the Yellowknife gold mining industry was just passing from the development to the production stage. This growth continued until 1942 in which year actual gold production amounted to about 100,000 fine ounces from the six producing mines in the area.

The population increased to about 3,000 in town and the surrounding area. The town was crowded and, although Yellowknife tried to satisfy the needs of the most recent influx, the Old Town had clearly outgrown its locations. A new site was surveyed in 1945 and gradually occupied from that year on.

By 1947, an extensive building program was underway including construction of a water and sewer system. In 1948, the Northwest Territories Power Commission now known as the Northern Canada Power Commission, completed a large hydro-electric plant of 8,350 H.P. on the Snare River about 90 miles upstream, to supplement the 4,700 H.P. plant built by the Consolidated Mining and Smelting Company on the Yellowknife River about 15 miles north of the Town. The capacity of the Snare River plant was increased substantially in 1960 with the construction of a 9,200 H.P. development at Snare Falls, some 10 miles downstream from the existing plant. Another plant of 8,500 H.P. was put into operation in the fall of 1976 at Snare Forks, about 15 miles downstream from Snare Falls.



M. Van Duffelen

In the summer of 1953, Yellowknife became a Municipal District and its first mayor was elected.

Speaking in Yellowknife on January 18th, 1967, the Honourable Arthur Laing, then Minister of Indian Affairs and Northern Development named Yellowknife as the capital of the Northwest Territories effective May 1st, 1967. The Commissioner of the Northwest Territories moved to Yellowknife, with his immediate staff, in September, 1967. On January 1st, 1970, Yellowknife became the first city in the Northwest Territories. Municipal government is now provided by a Council composed of a mayor and eight aldermen.



M. Van Duffelen

The Precambrian Building



M. Van Duffelen

**Cross Country skier on Frame Lake,
in the centre of Yellowknife**

Geology

Intense study has been focused on Yellowknife's geology since gold was discovered here in 1934. Four rock types — volcanics, sediments, granites and late intrusions can be seen from the roads in the area.

The oldest rocks exposed, a 30,000 foot thick sequence of green to black mafic volcanics including basalts and andesites of submarine origin, lie on the west side of Yellowknife Bay. Many basaltic flows in the volcanic sequence are pillow lavas formed when glassy blobs of lava spewed from submarine volcanics were suddenly piled upon one another.

After the main interruptions, erosion became dominant and the volcanic rocks were worn down to produce sediment. The sediments, called greywackes, form thick beds of unsorted, rapidly deposited material. Graded bedding formed where the material flowed down a continental shelf or underwater mountain slope and became size sorted. During this period of sedimentation, continued minor volcanic outpourings produced thin layers of volcanic rocks within the predominantly sedimentary sequence. This sequence of greywackes and interbedded volcanics is found on the east side of Yellowknife Bay. Large granitic plutons are found to the east and west of the basic volcanics and sediments. The granitic rocks were formed from a hot



liquid mass which intruded and overturned the volcanic rocks. During the cooling and partial crystallization of the granitic magma, a highly mobile liquid evolved which was forced into fractures to form pegmatite dykes and veins. These pegmatite dykes and quartz veins are lighter in colour because they are composed of the light coloured minerals, mainly potash feldspar and/or quartz.

Dark brown diabase dykes cut across all other rock types and form ridges like the one near the radio antennae just east of the Yellowknife River on the Ingraham Trail.

The pressures associated with the volcanic eruptions and the later intrusions broke the solid rock masses into units which then moved vertically and horizontally relative to each other along fault planes. These faults, and associated tension fractures, are very evident from the air in the Yellowknife area and cause much of the local topography. The West Bay Fault cuts across Franklin Road in Yellowknife and separates the New and Old Town. This fault also separates (by a distance of three miles) the gold bearing systems of Giant Yellowknife Ltd. and Con Mines Ltd.



Age dates on rocks from the Yellowknife area indicate that there was a single period some 2.6 billion years ago during which the lavas were extruded, eroded and intruded. This active period was followed by a long period of gradual uplift and erosion which exposed the rocks as they are today. Within the last 50,000 years several large glaciers moved across the terrain deepening the valleys, smoothing the contours of the hills and leaving striations and grooves on the rock surface and sand and gravel deposits such as those upon which Yellowknife's New Town and airport are built.



J. Murphy

For the Rock Hound

Good samples of amethyst, spodumene, beryl and scheelite may be found in the vicinity of Prosperous Lake, Hidden Lake and Tibbitt Lake. The spodumene and beryl are found in coarse grained pegmatites within the contact metamorphic aureole of the Prosperous Lake granite and occur with pink potash feldspar, white plagioclase and quartz. Scheelite is confined to quartz veins but is difficult to distinguish from weathered plagioclase. The amethyst occurs along a fault zone at the south end of Prosperous Lake. Metamorphic minerals, especially kyanite, staurolite, garnet and andalusite are found in the Prosperous Lake area. Gold ore specimens with nuggets are a rarity around Yellowknife but gold can be found as small but visible specks in narrow quartz veins.

Mining

Yellowknife began as a gold mining town, and gold mining continues to be the major industry in the City at present. Yellowknife is flanked by two of the largest gold mines in Canada. Between them, they work both ends of a rich seam that passes directly beneath the City. During the summer, tours of mine properties are arranged regularly for visitors who can watch the actual pouring of a gold brick and discover the processes involved in extracting gold from the tons of underground rock that are mined daily.

The gold is found in quartz-rich shear zones. Some experts think the gold was introduced into the shear zones by circulating hot water (hydrothermal) solutions originating in a nearby granitic intrusion. Others maintain the gold was remobilized from the shear zones, possibly by a carbon dioxide rich solution.

Since 1939 the total value of gold produced (to the end of 1976) was 377 million dollars. Operating mine shafts are located on the Con and Giant properties and serve five producing companies: Giant Yellowknife, Supercrest, Lolar, Con and Rycon. Con has recently invested 17 million dollars sinking the new Robertson shaft and erecting a new headframe.



G. Reimann

New headframe on Con mine's Robertson Shaft stands out on the southern edge of the City.



T. Kelley Photography

Pouring gold.



T. Kelley Photography

Scooptram in mine tunnel.



G. Hunter, courtesy Giant Mines.

Headframe and flower garden at Giant Mine.



T. Kelley Photography

Drill Jumbo in mine tunnel

Ingraham Trail



The Ingraham Trail, a 40-mile extension of the Mackenzie Highway system beyond Yellowknife, provides access to some of the most magnificent scenes of nature.

Parks and Recreation

Territorial Park campgrounds are located near Long Lake, within City Limits, and at Prelude Lake, 29 kilometres (18 miles) northeast of Yellowknife.

Territorial Park picnic sites are located at Boundary Creek, 37 kilometres (23 miles) northwest; Long Lake, 6 kilometres (4 miles) northwest; Yellowknife River, 19 kilometres (12 miles) northeast; Madeline Lake, 27 kilometres (17 miles) northeast and Prelude Lake, 29 kilometres (18 miles) northeast of Yellowknife.



serves as the route to a wide variety of camping, picnic and lodge facilities, as well as to

Camping permits are required for use of Territorial Park campgrounds. Permits (\$5.00) can be obtained from the 60th Parallel Visitor Information Centre, TravelArctic and Park Officers in Yellowknife.

City parks include beach areas in Long Lake and at McNiven Beach on Frame Lake. Pettitot Park, in which City Hall stands, is under development as a lakeside promenade.



D. Kielau

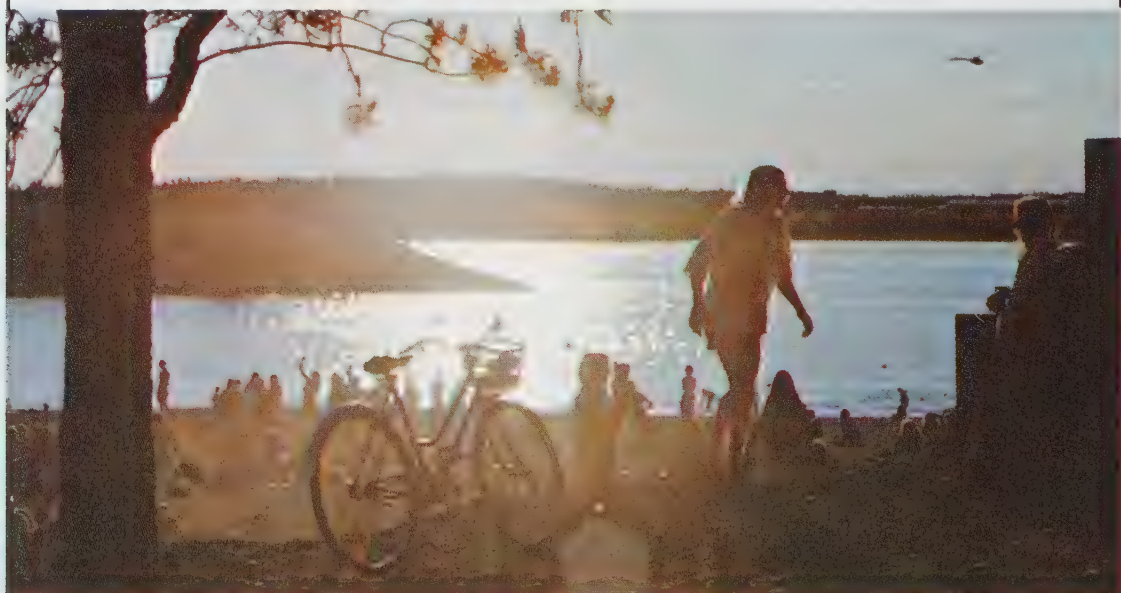
Cameron Falls

Recreational facilities include the Gerry Murphy Hockey Arena, the Fraser Tower Swimming Pool, the Tommy Forrest Ball Park, three minor ball parks, three curling rinks, bowling alley, rifle range, tennis courts, ski slope and 10 kilometres (6 miles) of ski trails.

The City is planning a new multi-purpose arena and curling facility.

Near the Airport stands the Bristol Monument: set atop a large rock is the actual Bristol aircraft that was the first wheeled plane to land at the North Pole.

In Old Town is the Bush Pilot's Memorial, to honour the pioneering bush pilots who helped so much to open up the north.



R. Heming, Outcrop Ltd.

Summer evening beach concert, Long Lake.

Hunting and Fishing

Yellowknife and the surrounding area offers first-rate hunting and fishing camps and lodges. Fishing licenses and small-game hunting licenses are available in Yellowknife. Non-residents of the Northwest Territories wishing to hunt big game must hire a licensed outfitter and guide as well as obtaining a big game license. For more information about regulations write to:

Superintendent Fish & Wildlife Service
Natural and Cultural Affairs
Government of the Northwest Territories
Yellowknife, Northwest Territories
X1A 2L9



N.W.T.

Caribou.

Fishing is one of the most popular sporting pastimes in the Yellowknife area both winter and summer. The fishermen will have a good fight with the following:

Northern Pike

Northern Pike, or “jackfish” as they are known throughout most of Canada, are found in abundance in many of the lakes in the area such as Prosperous, Prelude and Madeline. Weighing up to 15 pounds, these fish are identifiable by their elongated body, the lack of scales on top of the forward depressed head, and duck-like jaws. The back sides of the Northern Pike exhibit a bluish and greenish grey colour.

Trophy size fish in a land where the sun shines 20 hours a day during the mid-summer months.

Lake Trout

Found in several lakes close to Yellowknife “lakers” weighing in at 10 to 20 pounds are not uncommon. These fish may be caught by spinning, casting or trolling; but for the ultimate in sport, a flyrod and wet flies are recommended. Dark grey in colour with round pale spots sometimes tinged with pink, the Lake Trout’s underside is pale, or dark and spotted. The tail is deeply forked.



Pickerel

The pickerel, also known as walleye, is found in the smaller lakes in the area such as Martin Lake and Pickerel Lake. Varying in colour from darkish silver to a dark olive, pickerel run up to 6 or 7 pounds.

Arctic Grayling

The Arctic Grayling, found in the Yellowknife River and below Bluefish Hydro, provides the most exciting action a fly-fisherman can find. The Grayling can be caught on both wet and dry flies and on some types of small metal lures, and the angler will be rewarded with a most delicious feed. Weighing up to 2 pounds, the Arctic Grayling exhibits a beautiful dark blue back and purple grey sides. The outstanding characteristic is the large sail-like blackish grey dorsal fin with a bright red band on the upper edge and scattered blue and violet spots.

Whitefish

Although difficult to hook and land except by accident because of the soft mouth-parts, the whitefish can provide a spectacular battle when caught on the surface with a dry fly. The whitefish is egg-shaped with two flaps between the openings of each nostril and has a snout that overhangs the lower jaw. Its silver sides may shade to darker olive-brown. Whitefish are found in the Bluefish Hydro area.



Annual Events

CARIBOU CARNIVAL provides one of the major opportunities for all-round community involvement on an annual basis. The Carnival is held at the end of March, a week-long celebration of which the high spot is the 240 kilometre (150 mile) Canadian Championship Dog Derby race over the ice of Great Slave Lake. The Dog Derby is the toughest and richest marathon of this kind in Canada, taking place over three days in 80 kilometre laps. Together with the Miss Yellowknife contest, ice sculptures, northern games competitions, arts and crafts displays, beard contests, numerous evening happenings, and lots of Caribou Stew, the Carnival provides everyone with an opportunity to celebrate the coming of spring.



R. Heming, Outcrop Ltd.

Caribou Carnival—Canadian Championship Dog Derby.

THE SPORTSMEN'S SPIEL, the largest curling bonspiel held north of the 60th parallel has attracted some of Canada's top curlers. This popular event, an annual meet since 1971, is limited to 80 rinks and is held over the Easter weekend.

THE MIDNIGHT GOLF TOURNAMENT is held in Yellowknife each year to test the expertise and courage of golfers from near and far.



A. Repchuk

Yellowknife Golf Course challenges golfers with sand fairways and oil sand greens.

The Tournament takes advantage of the phenomenon of the midnight sun by starting flights of golfers at various times throughout the night. The tournament is held on the weekend closest to June 21st.

Also held in conjunction with the golf tournament is MIDNIGHT MADNESS where the commercial establishments remain open from 10:00 p.m. to 1:00 a.m.



D.I.A.N.D.

Long Lake Beach.

CANADA WEEK CELEBRATIONS. June 26 - July 2. Canoeists dunk each other in jousting contests; sample culinary delights from around the world at the ethnic cultural festival. Watch the races, the bands, the parade and the ball tournaments during the longest days of the northern summer. Local media and the Tourist Bureau will keep visitors up-to-date with schedules and information.



M. Freeland

Canoe jousting during Canada Day Celebrations

NORTH OF 60 COUNTRY FAIR is a fall fair that takes place on the Labour Day Weekend. Arts and crafts displays are judged, there are bake contests, vegetable judging, flower arranging, dog show, and all the other activities common to events of this nature.

Government

Yellowknife is the Capital of the Northwest Territories and administrative centre for the Government of the Northwest Territories and Federal agencies.

The Commissioner is a local resident representing the Minister of Indian Affairs and Northern Development. City government is by a Council consisting of Mayor and eight Aldermen.



TravelArctic

Ferry crossing the Mackenzie River at Fort Providence.

Utilities

Electricity is supplied by Northern Canada Power Commission through Plains Western Gas and Electric Co. Ltd.

A chlorinated and fluoridated soft water supply is provided by the City Works Department, as is the sewer system.

Service Clubs and Organizations

Benevolent & Protective

Order of Elks

Order of the Royal Purple

Giant 10 Year Club

Rotary Club

Royal Canadian Legion

Ladies Auxiliary for Royal

Canadian Legion

Yellowknife Toastmasters

Yellowknife Masonic Lodge

Mothers & Tots Association

Yellowknife TOPS (Take off

Pounds Sensibly)

Jaycees

Lions Club

Citizens Band Club of

Yellowknife

Daughters of the Midnight

Sun

Imperial Order of the

Daughters of the Empire

NWT Options for Women

Voice of Women

Yellowknife Hospital

Auxiliary

Services and Associations

Alcoholics Anonymous

Consumers Association

Mental Health Association

H.E.L.P. (Information &

Distress Centre)

North of 60 Club

NWT Arctic Winter Games

Unit

NWT Public Services

Association

St. John Ambulance

Tree of Peace

Friendship Centre

YK Branch of the Canadian

Institute of Mining &

Metalurgy

YK Trailer Association

Yellowknife Exhibition

Association

I.A.B.C. Polar Chapter

Ecology North

Geology Club

Indian Brotherhood of the

N.W.T.

Metis Association of the N.W.T

Metis Association Local 55

NWT Family Planning

Association

NWT Tourist Association*

TravelArctic

Travel Industry Association -

N.W.T.

Yellowknife Convention

Bureau

YK Health Centre

Y.W.C.A.

Welcome Wagon

Sports North Federation

Crafts, Hobbies, Sports Clubs and Organizations

No matter what your interests you should be able to find a club or organization made up of people with similar interests. Wide community use is made of the schools and their facilities. The City of Yellowknife keeps an up-to-date listing of clubs and organizations, and information on specific clubs may be obtained by contacting the City Recreation Department.

Churches

Anglican
Holy Trinity Church,
4909 - 52nd Street

Baptist
Calvary Baptist Church
Franklin Avenue

Church of Christ
5208 - 56th Street

Church of the Nazarene
4920 - 54th Avenue

Baha'i World Faith
Telephone 873-2361

Jehovah's Witnesses
Kingdom Hall, Peace River
Flats

Lutheran
Holy Family, Northern

United Place
Pentecostal
Chapel, Nolton Road
Latham Island Tabernacle
5000 - 49th Street

Roman Catholic
St. Patrick's Church
5205 - 53rd Street

Seventh Day Adventists
5006 Forrest Drive

United Church
Northern United Place
50th Avenue

Church of Jesus Christ
Latter Day Saints
Telephone 873-3038



City Hall

Education

Public Schools: Mildred Hall (Grades 1 - 6); J. H. Sissons (Grades 1 - 6);
Wm. L. MacDonald (Grades 7 - 9)

Territorial Composite Academic & Vocational High School: Sir John
Franklin

Separate School: St. Patrick's (Kindergarten to 12), St. Joseph's (K-9)

Akaiatcho Hall is a residence for boys and girls from other
municipalities in the Northwest Territories attending the Sir John
Franklin School.

Local Names

MITCHELL DRIVE — named after Alex Mitchell — long time prospector in Yellowknife.

McMEEKAN CAUSEWAY — named after Jock McMeekan — miner, prospector, newspaperman in Yellowknife area, produced the YK Blade.

TOMMY FORREST BALL PARK — named after Tommy Forrest Jr. an avid sportsman.

FORREST DRIVE — named after Tommy Forrest Sr. a well-known citizen of Yellowknife for many years.

TAYLOR ROAD — named after George Taylor — an alderman active in sporting interests.

SISSONS COURT — named after Justice J. H. Sissons, Judge of the N.W.T. 1955-66.

PHINNEY COURT — named after Justice Larry Phinney, Magistrate of the N.W.T.

LANKY COURT — named after Lanky Muyres, an avid Yellowknifer and owner of Lanky Agencies.

MATONABEE STREET — named after the chief who guided Samuel Hearne across the Arctic to Yellowknife area.

GITZEL STREET — named after Captain S. Gitzel who gave his life in an air rescue search in the north.

ALBATROSS COURT } — named after the 2 search planes that were used in the
DAKOTA COURT } rescue search by Captain S. Gitzel.

NORSEMAN DRIVE }
STINSON ROAD } — derived from the types of early aircraft used for
FAIRCHILD CRESCENT } transportation and exploration in the north.
BELLANCA AVENUE }

FRANKLIN AVENUE — named after Sir John Franklin who was an early explorer in this area.

PILOTS LANE — named in memory of the many pilots who lived on this lane.

STOUT DRIVE — named after Smokey Stout, one of the first inhabitants of the area.

HERSHMAN ROAD — named after Charlie Hershman, engineer with Yellowknife Bear Mines in earlier days.

HAMILTON DRIVE — named after Red Hamilton who came in 1936. Water taxi operator at Con.

LATHAM ISLAND — named after Gordon Latham, prospector, partner with Pete Racine, had only hotel accommodation in 1938.

JOLLIFFE ISLAND — named after Dr. A. W. Jolliffe, a geologist who surveyed much of the area in 1935.

BACK BAY — named after Dr. Back, Government Surveyor.

YELLOWKNIFE — derived from Yellowknife Indians — tribe used primitive instruments fashioned from copper. Bay & River — named in association with this tribe.

FRAME LAKE — named after Bill Frame of Frame & Perkins, hoistman, original owner.

LONG LAKE — named because of its shape.

JACKFISH LAKE — nicknamed for this species of fish.

PROSPEROUS LAKE — translation of Indian word for this lake.

INGRAHAM TRAIL — named after Vic Ingraham, an adventurous traveller who established a large retail business.

CAMERON FALLS — named after Don Cameron, a prospector & representative of Fro-bisher Explorations.

- CON ROAD** — derived from Consolidated Mining Co., a gold mining company.
- GIANT ROAD** — derived from Giant Yellowknife Mines Ltd., a gold mining firm.
- PETTITOT PARK** — named after Lavey Pettitot, a missionary and early surveyor.
- DOORNBOS LANE** — named after Tom Doornbos who still resides in Yellowknife. An early inhabitant and prospector.
- RACCINE ROAD** — named after Pete Raccine who was one of the first settlers in Yellowknife — built one of the first hotels.
- INGRAHAM DRIVE** — named after Vic Ingraham, one of the first entrepreneurs in Yellowknife.
- BOFFA DRIVE** — named after Ernie Boffa, one of the best known bush pilots of the North in the 40's.
- McAVOY ROAD** — named after Jim McAvoy, a prospector and pilot.
- WEAVER DRIVE** — named after Harry Weaver who came to Yellowknife in 1939 and set up a trading store.
- KNUTSEN LANE** — named after Andy Knutsen, a tinsmith in Yellowknife.
- OTTO DRIVE** — named after Sam Otto, prospector, barren lands traveller.
- BOLTON ROAD** — named after Ted Bolton, trapper.
- HEARNE HILL ROAD** — named after Sir Samuel Hearne, explorer.
- BROMLEY DRIVE** — named after Graham Peter Bromley, who established one of the many prosperous stores in Yellowknife.
- CALDER LANE** — named after Ian Calder, dentist, an early settler who was one of the first dentists in Yellowknife.
- MORRISON DRIVE** — named after Frank Morrison, prospector in 1936.
- BRETZLAFF DRIVE** — named after Lil Bretzlaff who owned Lakeview Cafe.
- WATT DRIVE** — named after Claud Watt, trapper & prospector.
- BRYSON ROAD** — named after Charlie Bryson, Manager for Hirschorn Interest in the early days.
- McNIVEN BEACH** — named after Mr. Jack McNiven, superintendent of Negus Mine.
- GREAT SLAVE LAKE** — called Thu-tue, Chipewyan Lake of the Breasts.
- AKAITCHO HALL** — named after Chief Akaitcho of Yellowknife Tribe who travelled with Franklin.
- GERRY MURPHY ARENA** — named after Gerry Murphy, one of the first businessmen in Yellowknife, partner with Ingraham, established Murphy Services.
- STANTON YELLOWKNIFE HOSPITAL** — named after Dr. Oliver Stanton who started the first hospital in 1937.
- WILDCAT CAFE** — 1937 — one of the many social spots for the prospering community.
- MILDRED HALL ELEMENTARY SCHOOL** — named after Mildred Hall, one of Yellowknife's first school teachers.
- FRASER TOWERS** — named after Fred Fraser, former R.C.A.F. Personnel, magistrate of Yellowknife in 1944 and Commissioner of the N.W.T.
- WILLIAMS DRIVE** — named after Ted Williams who came to Yellowknife in 1937. Prospector & Justice of the Peace.
- BURWASH POINT** — named after Major Lockie Burwash, famous Arctic explorer in 1930's.
- WILEY DRIVE** — Willy Wiley, a long-time assistant to Vic Ingraham.

For more information about Yellowknife, please write stating the aspects you are particularly interested in to:

City Administrator, City of Yellowknife
P.O. Box 580, Yellowknife, N.W.T.
X1A 2N4

OR

President, Yellowknife Chamber of Commerce
P.O. Box 906, Yellowknife, N.W.T.
X1A 1H0

For information about other areas of the Northwest Territories, write to:

TravelArctic
Government of the Northwest Territories
Yellowknife, N.W.T.
X1A 2L9

For more detailed information about the geology of Yellowknife and the Northwest Territories visit the Resident Geologist's Office, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Bellanca Building, Yellowknife, N.W.T.

The Mountain Avens



L. Nichols

Mountain Avens, floral emblem of
the Northwest Territories.



Getting Along in the Arctic Islands

BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY

04187

POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM

Introduction

Most Canadians live in a thin strip of land along the southern border of Canada. For the majority, this population belt represents comfortable and familiar territory.

Some of the most fascinating Canadian countryside, however, lies in the relatively uninhabited areas 'up North.' Northern regions are foreign to most of us, the strangeness of the life and land increasing with distance.

The high Arctic, being most distant, is consequently perceived as most alien. Increasingly, however, development of the North is rendering this land of long days and nights, enduring cold, and austere beauty accessible to greater numbers of people.

The 'barrens' is a term often used to describe the lands of the Arctic. Much of the high Arctic is barren of all forms of life, but the term is still, in many respects, a misnomer. To those who have seen the myriads of flowers blooming in the brief summer, the Arctic is certainly not barren. One gets the same impression when observing a herd of whales swimming in a sheltered fiord or watching a score of muskoxen grazing on a wind-swept meadow.

This booklet is designed to create an awareness and understanding of the environment in the Arctic Islands. It contains information on climate, people, land, plants, land mammals, birds, seas and sea ice, marine mammals, fish, and ways of handling the cold. Although it applies generally to the Canadian Arctic Archipelago, it focuses on the upper tier of the Archipelago known as the Queen Elizabeth Islands, because it is here that much of Petro-Canada's activities for the proposed Arctic Pilot Project would be concentrated.

We who visit the North must remember that while we are there, minimal disturbance of the land and its people should be our motto. In this spirit, the concerns of all parties interested in northern development can best be accommodated.





Climate

The main features of the climate of the Arctic Islands are low temperatures, short cool summers, long cold winters, and low precipitation.

Average annual temperatures are lower than in any other part of Canada, ranging from -6°C at Baffin Island in the extreme southeast to -20°C in northern Ellesmere Island. But record low temperatures of -45°C to -50°C at most stations in the Arctic Archipelago are not as low as the North American record of -63°C reported at Snag in the Yukon, or even the -55°C to -60°C temperatures that have been reported at a few northern locations in the western provinces and Ontario. Obviously, the Arctic Archipelago does not earn its reputation as the coldest region in Canada from extremes of low temperature but rather from the persistent cold it experiences.

During the cool summer, the largely ice-covered seas with surface temperatures near -1°C prevent the air from warming appreciably. Consequently, summer temperatures are cool throughout the entire region, averaging 1°C to 8°C during July, the warmest month. Summers are generally unpleasant, with a high percentage of low cloud and drizzly weather.

In winter, most water surfaces are frozen, but conduction of heat from the water below the ice exerts a moderating influence. February is normally the coldest month, with average temperatures generally ranging from -33°C to -38°C in the Queen Elizabeth Islands.

A record low temperature of -54°C was recorded at Isachsen on Ellef Ringnes Island on March 16, 1956. The record high at Cambridge Bay on southern Victoria Island is 29°C , recorded on July 1, 1930. These are not necessarily the meteorological champions for the Archipelago, but they probably come close.

Winters pass in near darkness. The polar night on Melville Island begins late in Oc-

tober and ends in early February, a little over three months when the sun does not appear. The nights are seldom really dark because of the glitter of stars, often reinforced by moonlight. Nightless days, when the sun never sets, last from early May to mid-August.

The Archipelago receives very little precipitation. The annual total over most of the Queen Elizabeth Islands averages less than 13 centimetres, no greater than on the Sahara. Eureka reports 6 centimetres a year. Although showers and even a rare thunderstorm may occur occasionally in the southern part of the Archipelago, most summer rainfall is in the form of a light drizzle.

Snow may fall in any month of the year, but the ground begins to clear in late June. Some snowbanks persist through the summer, but most of the snow that falls in the summer months does not remain on the ground. New snow begins to accumulate in September. Although snowfall is light, maximum monthly snowfalls occur in autumn and spring.

Because Arctic snow is so fine and powdery, it is readily blown about by the wind with the result that much of the ground is bare throughout the winter, although accumulations up to 6 metres deep may form in ravines, hollows, and in the lee of obstacles. The average depth of late winter snow cover in the Archipelago varies from about 75 centimetres in the extreme southeast to less than 25 centimetres in the northwest.

Winds at most Arctic stations are no stronger than those at cities in southern Canada. Average wind speeds are about 16 kilometres per hour, although hourly wind speeds have exceeded 100 to 110 kilometres per hour at most locations. In mountainous regions, particularly in restricted locations, there may be gale-force winds for about one-third of the year, while in nearby areas there may be only a couple of stormy days a year.

Because of the low temperatures, the chilling effects of winds are considerable. The term "wind-chill" is often used to in-

dicate the relative severity, or human discomfort, of the combination of wind and low temperature. January on Prince Patrick Island has a mean wind-chill of 2250 watts per square metre, which corresponds to a temperature of -40°C and a wind speed of 15 kilometres per hour (see the wind-chill graph in the sec-

tion on *Man and the Cold*). This is extremely cold as at 1850, unprotected skin can freeze in 1 minute with direct exposure. But severe wind-chill factors are not confined to the Arctic. January in Winnipeg has a mean wind-chill of 1800 despite the fact that Winnipeg lies 3000 kilometres to the south.





Snowhouse, Jones Sound

People

The upper tier of the Archipelago, the Queen Elizabeth Islands, is a massive area virtually devoid of people. There are only two Inuit settlements, Resolute on Cornwallis Island and Grise Fiord on Ellesmere Island.

Resolute is a key transportation and communications centre. The settlement of Resolute Bay has a permanent population of about 160 and the "base," located at the airport, has a largely floating population of around 130 with seasonal increases to two or three hundred. Grise Fiord, with about 100 people, still depends primarily on the traditional Inuit pursuits of hunting, trapping, fishing, and handicrafts. Weather stations are maintained year round at Eureka on Ellesmere Island and Mould Bay on Prince Patrick Island.

Alert, a military base and weather station with a population of 200, is located on the northern tip of Ellesmere Island. It is the most northerly settlement in Canada. Melville, Bathurst, Devon, Axel Heiberg, Amund Ringnes, and other

smaller islands of the Queen Elizabeth group have no permanent settlements.

There are archaeological sites on Axel Heiberg, Bathurst, Coburg, Devon, Ellesmere, and Cornwallis Islands, indicating that early Eskimo peoples lived throughout the region at various times in the past. During the 1800's and early 1900's, when such explorers as Sir William Edward Parry, Sir John Ross, Sir John Franklin, Otto Sverdrup, and Vilhjalmur Stefansson plied the arctic seas, no Inuit lived on the Queen Elizabeth Islands, although groups of Inuit living on more southerly islands travelled to the area in hunting parties or with scientific and exploratory expeditions. In the early 1950's, Inuit families were moved to Resolute and Grise Fiord from northern Quebec and Baffin Island, thus repopulating the area.

Why did so few Inuit inhabit this region? The main reason is a scarcity of food. On Melville Island, walrus are absent and seal and fish populations are low. About 2000 Peary caribou inhabit the island, but the population has declined drama-

tically in recent years and probably could not sustain intensive hunting pressure. Muskoxen are relatively abundant, numbering 2000-3000 but even a brief flurry of hunting would endanger this species locally.

When dealing with people who live by customs different than our own, we run the risk of making a fundamental error in human relations: we take our own customs for granted and judge the ways of others by how close they come to our own.

In order to deal effectively with strangers, it is essential that we appreciate their values and viewpoints. This is not only a courteous course of action; it also minimizes costly or embarrassing errors which result from misunderstanding.

The people who live in Canada's high Arctic are called Eskimos by southerners, though they refer to themselves as the Inuit, which means simply "the people." (The name "Eskimo" is actually derived from the Cree word "Esquimau" meaning "eaters of raw meat.")

Ancestors of the Inuit have inhabited the arctic desert for at least 5,000 years. During this time, they have shown tremendous adaptability and inventiveness to cope with their harsh environment and have evolved a way of life intimately connected to the land which is, to them, vital and precious. Examples of their ingenuity include: snowhouses or igloos, still used by Inuit hunters on the land; stone lamps or "kudliks" used for cooking, light, and heat; stone figures or "inukshuks," built to guide travellers or frighten caribou into ambush; and pronged spears or "kaki-vats," traditionally used for spearing fish.

Since the days of explorers, fur traders, and whalers, the Inuit have had increasing contact with southern Canadian society. Most under age 30 have had some schooling, probably up to grades 6 or 8, and those under middle age usually know some English. They all speak their own language, "Inuktitut," and many can write this language in syllabics.

Fewer Inuit live on the land now. They reside in small settlements that usually have a nursing station, a small store, an RCMP officer, and some government offices. They take an active role in community affairs as settlement chairmen and councillors, as well as in other areas of community involvement such as the running of craft and housing co-operatives. The numbers of full-time hunters and trappers have declined; however, many Inuit still depend on the land to provide food and recreation as well as cash income from furs.

Centuries of living off the land made it necessary for the Inuit to develop and adopt certain customs in order to survive. Although these customs seem unfamiliar to southern Canadians, they were essential and effective for the Inuit way of life.

The Inuit have a distinctive attitude toward space and time. Generations of hunting on a vast, harsh land made time and distance almost irrelevant. The endless search for food was not dictated by clocks. Consequently, work schedules and punctuality, so important to us, are new concepts for the Inuit and strict adherence to them is unfamiliar.

As a hunting people, the Inuit could not plan too far into the future. Having no control over nature, they learned to wait with patience until the weather improved or the caribou herds came by.

Related to Inuit conceptions of time and their closeness to the land are seasonal variations in their temperament. The necessity and pleasures of hunting continue to play an essential part in Inuit lifestyles. This deep attachment is especially evident in the spring when game becomes plentiful. Even when employed, many Inuit continue to feel compelled to leave other commitments and hunt for their meat supply.

Southerners can have difficulty communicating with the Inuit who conscientiously use non-verbal cues and gestures to convey their messages and understand those of others. This makes

them appear more soft-spoken and sensitive than many whites.

The Inuit are not an overtly competitive or aggressive people. This is not to say that they are not energetic or competent. They just do not share our tendency to berate ourselves or others when a challenge is not met.

Generations of living in a difficult environment have instilled a co-operative rather than competitive spirit among the Inuit. In such a world, collective survival depended on getting along. Consequently, harsh words and physical abuse were not tolerated.

It is clear that the Inuit are quite different from us and should be appreciated as such. They deserve the respect that all visitors should show to a different culture. And like all good guests, we should remember that when we are unsure of what is going on, or how to act, the safest course of action is to proceed cautiously.

If we fail to appreciate the land and people of the high Arctic, we can expect to meet difficulty or embarrassment. Mutual feelings of respect are easily lost and difficult to regain.

It is important for newcomers to be sensitive and cautious with the people of the North. Only if we take this attitude can encounters be mutually productive.

*Inuk hunter and seal,
Jones Sound*

R. R. RIEWE



Prehistory

Ancestors of the Inuit have occupied parts of the Arctic Archipelago for several thousand years. The Denbigh people, the first Eskimo culture of the Canadian Arctic, spread rapidly eastward from Alaska 5000 years ago. Denbigh people were living on northern Ellesmere Island about 4500 years ago — long before the days of the Roman Empire. They sewed clothing with needles fashioned from the bones of birds and foxes, hunted with bows and arrows, and lived in oval houses probably roofed with skins.

Possibly owing to a cooling trend in the climate, the Denbigh people moved south, abandoning the northern islands. When warmer conditions returned, about 3000 years ago, a new culture called the “Dorset Culture” or “Toonit” spread rapidly across the Arctic, reoccupying most of the region once inhabited by the Denbigh people.

The Dorset people seem to have adapted well to life among snow and ice. They made snow knives from bones and may have been the first to use the snowhouse or igloo. Their houses were heated by stone lamps fueled with animal fat.

About 1000 to 1500 years ago, another warming trend coincided with the spread of another new culture across the Arctic. Known as the Thule culture, it developed from the original Denbigh culture in Alaska. After centuries during which the Dorset people mingled with or retreated from the Thule people, the Dorset culture disappeared.

The Thule people, ancestors of the Inuit, were better equipped than the Denbigh or Dorset people. They lived in large villages in houses with stone floors and walls made from whale ribs or boulders covered with turf. The cornerstone of their culture was whaling.

From 1650 to 1850, there was a spell of cold climate known as the “Little Ice Age.” During this time, whaling became less successful and the people turned to

caribou and seals as their mainstays. The importance of villages declined and smaller groups lived in seasonal camps in tents and snowhouses. By about 1700, the Thule culture had become that of the modern Eskimos, the Inuit.

The Value of Country Food

Southern food is very expensive in the Arctic due to high transportation and overhead costs. Most people living in settlements cannot afford to depend on it for the bulk of their diet. As a result, the value of locally harvested game and fish is very high. Even if people could afford to buy southern food, they would find it inferior to native fare: the protein content of wild game such as caribou is about 50 percent higher than that of domestic livestock.

Formal Organization

The settlements of Resolute Bay and Grise Fiord have elected councils to manage community affairs.

Administrative support is provided to each council by a settlement secretary who is seconded to the council by the Government of the Northwest Territories. Councils should be consulted well in advance of conducting any activities in and around a community.

Arctic communities frequently have other formal organizations which should be consulted or of which the visitor should be aware. For example, the Hunters and Trappers Association is an advisory group with concerns for environmental, wildlife, and similar matters within the territory used by hunters and trappers of the community.

Most Inuit communities are linked to the Inuit Tapirisat (Eskimo Brotherhood) of Canada via a resident representative. The Inuit Tapirisat, an umbrella organization based in Ottawa, makes frequent representations to government on behalf of Inuit communities. It has been responsible for researching and preparing the Inuit land claims for the high and eastern Arctic.



Land

Bjorne Peninsula, Ellesmere Island

The Canadian Arctic Archipelago, with a land area of over 1,300,000 square kilometres, is the largest island group in the world. It can be divided into two tiers separated by the Parry Channel which runs east and west from Lancaster Sound to M'Clure Strait. The lower tier contains Baffin and Victoria Islands, the fifth and ninth largest islands in the world. The upper tier is the Queen Elizabeth Islands which comprise a land area of about 430,000 square kilometres.

Most of the Queen Elizabeth Islands are polar desert, with rolling plateaus, marine

plains, or rugged undulating uplands featuring occasional steep escarpments and frequent outcrops of limestone, sandstone, and shale. Ellesmere, Devon, and Axel Heiberg Islands are mountainous; in places, summits rise above 2 kilometres, forming a deeply indented and dissected rugged fiord coastline.

Melville Island, the third largest island in the group, is mostly highland in character. The terrain is very rugged, with maximum heights reaching about 1 kilometre. The coasts of the island vary from low,



R. R. RIEWE

flat beaches to sheer 360-metre cliffs. In contrast, the southwest coast of Bathurst Island slopes gently to the sea, with gravelly ridges marking emerged beaches.

The islands have only recently (in geological time) begun emerging from beneath the glaciers that covered them about 10,000 years ago. As the glaciers melted, the land was freed from the crushing weight of ice and began to "spring back" faster than the melting ice caused the sea to rise. Devon Island rose at a geologically rapid rate of a few centi-

metres per year for the first 1000 years. Then the rate of rise steadily decreased and now appears to be matched by the rise in sea level.

Extensive glacier systems still cover parts of the eastern and northern Archipelago and are a feature of the islands. On eastern Devon Island, an ice cap rises to a dome about 1900 metres above sea level, while on northern Ellesmere Island the ice cap is about 2100 metres above sea level, punctuated by mountain peaks which are among the highest in Canada.

Ecological Sites

Ecological sites are unique areas, designated to be of such biological importance that they are worthy of special protection. These areas support a variety of plant and animal communities and may contain relic or endangered populations, unique plant associations, breeding areas and critical ranges for animals, pristine lakes, mineral springs, and marine areas. These sites are intended to allow the opportunity to study natural ecosystems or to observe the recovery of ecosystems from natural and human disturbance.

Twenty-three areas have been proposed for consideration as ecological sites in the Queen Elizabeth Islands. These sites represent a variety of unique plant and animal communities. • Bailey Point on Melville Island has the highest muskox densities in the Canadian Arctic. • Seymour Island northwest of Bathurst Island, has the only breeding colony of the rare ivory gull in the Canadian Arctic and is a proposed federal Migratory Bird Sanctuary. • The Bracebridge-Goodsir Inlets site (Polar Bear Pass) on Bathurst Island provides important habitat for 42 species of birds and 8 species of mammals. • Hobhouse Inlet on Devon Island is the home of 75,000 to 100,000 breeding pairs of northern fulmars — possibly the largest colony known. • The Cape Sparbo site on Devon Island features lowlands with exceptionally luxuriant vegetation, 150-200 muskoxen, and lakes containing arctic char. The Truelove Lowland, part of the site, has been the base for many geological, glaciological, ecological, and archaeological studies. • The Coburg Island site, at the eastern entrance to Jones Sound, features 200,000 breeding pairs of thick-billed murre, walrus haul-out sites, and large concentrations of belugas and narwhals. • Tanquary Fiord on Ellesmere Island has a diverse flora due to its remarkably warm summers. • Fosheim Peninsula on Ellesmere Island, described as one of the richest biological sites in the high Arctic,

supports thousands of arctic hares, often found in large herds. • Phillips Inlet on the top of Ellesmere Island is noted for its glaciers including the ice shelf which is the source of most of the large ice islands found among the Queen Elizabeth Islands.

Permafrost

One of the characteristics of northern areas of Canada is the ground condition known as permafrost. Permafrost is a term used to describe ground that remains below 0°C for at least one year. The definition, which has nothing to do with the type of ground, applies equally well to frozen sands or gravels as to solid rock.

The first recorded observation of this phenomenon in North America was made by Martin Frobisher in the late 1500's. It was during the excavation of ore on southern Baffin Island that frozen ground was encountered.

Permafrost thickness in the Archipelago is believed to range from 300 metres at Cambridge Bay, Victoria Island, to possibly 600 metres on the north coast of Ellesmere Island. Permafrost thickness of 1000 metres or more may exist in the interior of Baffin and Ellesmere Islands, particularly at high elevations. The thickest recorded permafrost in the Archipelago, and indeed in Canada, is at Winter Harbour on Melville Island where temperature measurements indicate the permafrost to be about 560 metres thick.

Above the permafrost is the active layer which freezes in winter and thaws in summer. Generally less than 1 metre thick, it varies in depth depending on climatic and terrain factors.

Keeping the permafrost frozen depends on maintaining the balance between heat entering the ground and heat leaving it.

If the surface is disturbed, especially if insulating vegetation is removed, more heat than usual can enter the ground and alter the balance. Where the underlying permafrost consists of frozen rock, such disturbances create few problems. But where underlying permafrost consists of frozen soils containing ice, the soils lose their ability to support a load and settle as the ice melts away. Many problems can result, ranging from rutting and scarring of the landscape to ponding and landslides.

The ice in frozen soil can take several forms. Often invisible to the naked eye, it acts as a cementing agent between soil particles. Sometimes individual crystals can be seen, while in other cases distinct veins of ice occur. Large ice masses can be found in some areas in irregular

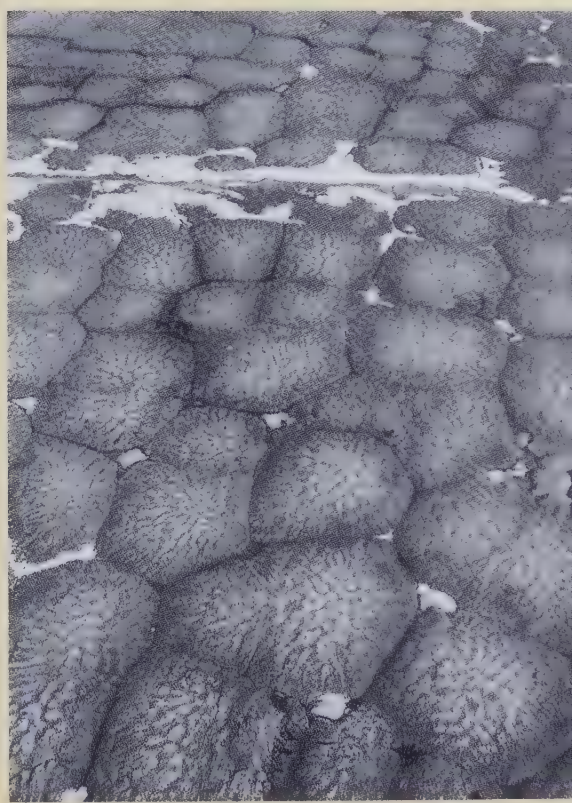
layers, as vertical wedge-shaped veins or as large blocks and sheets.

Soils with high ice content can sometimes be detected by the presence of patterned ground, frost mounds, areas where the ground has settled as a result of previous disturbance, or areas where the wet, thawed, active layer gradually creeps downslope over the frozen sub-soil.

To protect the surface from disturbance, overland travel and construction activities can be restricted to winter when the ground is frozen. When summer construction activity is necessary, disturbance of permafrost can be reduced by placing structures or work sites (drilling rigs, camps, airstrips, wharves, or stock-pile areas) on an insulating gravel pad.



Frost mound, often an indication of the presence of high-ice-content soils in an area.



Aerial photograph of patterned ground. Ice-wedge polygons such as these commonly measure 30 to 50 metres across.

R. M. HARDY AND ASSOCIATES LTD.

Litter

Disposal of litter and garbage is an inevitable problem at field camps and larger facilities throughout the Arctic. Too often we have seen pictures of rusting gas barrels, windblown plastic and paper, and abandoned heavy equipment scarring the northern landscape. Litter continues to be an eyesore for many years after the camp itself is gone. This is particularly true in the Arctic where natural decomposition is very slow.

Today, an increased sensitivity toward the problems of litter is backed up by laws and regulations that govern disposal and provide penalties for those who dump wastes, including garbage. Most industrial activities in the North are now conducted under land-use regulations that specify how waste is to be removed.

Such regulations go a long way toward maintaining the land in an aesthetically pleasing state. In general, the regulations state that whatever is taken into camps should be taken out again, except for those items that are permitted to be buried or incinerated. Complete daily incineration of all waste food is essential to discourage polar bears, foxes, and wolves from gathering around camps. Any rubbish that accumulates over winter makes a thorough spring cleanup an essential part of camp maintenance.

Litter, although it might seem a small item, can do much to affect an operation's public image. The Inuit inhabitants of these northern areas have a profound respect for the land. We can exhibit our good faith by showing a similar respect — and good housekeeping is an important step in this direction.

Plant Life

In many respects, the high Arctic is a desert. Vast areas are covered by rock-strewn barren flats which, in summer, appear bare of vegetation from the air. But as in other desert regions, there are relatively lush oases. These oases, generally confined to coastal lowlands and valleys, sustain an almost continuous cover of sedges and mosses as well as some flowering plants. Although they cover only 2 percent of the landmass, these oases provide important habitat to certain wildlife species.

Plants of the high Arctic are characteristically short. Lichens, a component of most plant communities, are usually under 3 centimetres tall. Most species of flowers grow in dense cushions or mats that seldom grow beyond 10 centimetres in height. Sedges and grasses, the "giant" plants of the islands, rarely grow taller than 25 centimetres, even in the best sites.

Only a few woody species commonly grow in the treeless islands, the most common being a low, ground-hugging willow. Less frequent are a type of heather and a blueberry that rarely bears fruit. There are no climbing plants, poisonous plants, plants that sting, or plants protected by thorns or spines.

Nearly all arctic species are perennials. Summer is generally too short for annual species to germinate, bloom, and produce seed in one season in all but the best and most protected sites. And even in these areas, a "crop failure" could eliminate a species locally.

Permafrost affects plant growth by keeping soil temperatures low. This results in little soil development, inhibits the activity of soil micro-organisms which release nutrients needed for growth, and even reduces the ability of plants to take up limited nutrients that may be released.

Entrance to fox den on Devon Island. Vegetation around animal burrows, owl perches, skeletal remains, and other "enriched" local areas is often more colourful than in the surrounding landscape.

R. R. RIEWE



Gale-force winter winds play a major role in limiting the height, growth, and distribution of arctic plants. They drive small, hard, sharp snow crystals against all exposed plant parts, abrading, drying, and finally killing them. Some species only grow in depressions that are quickly filled by the snows of early winter. A single exposure of one of these plants to abrasion will reduce its vigour for several years, possibly killing it. Plants that grow in more exposed areas are low-growing and have evolved wintering buds that are hidden inside the plant mat or cushion where they are protected by old leaves or other plant parts.

Arctic plants have developed numerous adaptations to low summer temperatures. Most adaptations raise the temperature at which plants carry out their metabolic activities. The formation of dense mats, cushions, and rosettes reduces wind movement among leaves and traps air. Many flowering species also have abundant deep red pigments, in addition to the normal green chlorophyll, that give the plant a dark appearance. The combined factors of trapped air and dark colour cause plant parts to be 10°C or more higher than the surrounding air. Some arctic flowers, such as the arctic poppy, are "solar heaters." Their para-



Muskoxen in a lush oasis on Devon Island

bolic shape, colour, dark pigment, and a sun-tracking mechanism all combine to increase the internal temperature of the plant 5 to 10°C. This makes it possible for seeds to ripen by speeding up metabolic activities in the ovary and attracts insects which come to bask in the warmth and pollinate the flower.

Large boulders influence plant growth indirectly by creating favourable conditions around themselves. They concentrate rain in narrow zones around their edges. In addition, many large rocks are used as perches by birds such as snowy owls; the birds often leave droppings and

bits of food nearby. The higher levels of moisture and nutrients around the boulders greatly improve the suitability of these sites for plant growth.

Plants have the ability to grow and flourish in the severe conditions of the Queen Elizabeth Islands but they grow very slowly. Disturbed, they may die or take an extremely long time to recover. Very few species can pioneer disturbed sites since seed production, seedling establishment, and growth rates are low. Disturbance of the plant cover by overland travel in summer should be prohibited, particularly in the lush areas which cover such a small part of the landscape.



Cottongrass on southern Melville Island



Arctic fox

*Peary caribou,
Bjorne Peninsula,
Ellesmere Island*

R. R. RIEWE



Land Mammals

The Queen Elizabeth Islands and surrounding seas are home to relatively few species of mammals, at least when compared to the rest of Canada, and populations of most of these are small. Of the approximately 200 species of mammals in Canada, only 17 occur in the islands. Several of these are peripheral to the region, occurring only in the easternmost areas. On the land, the list includes two large grazers (caribou and muskoxen), three carnivores (wolf, arctic fox, and ermine), one rodent (the collared lemming), and the arctic hare.

Peary caribou, smaller and paler than their mainland relatives, the barren-

ground caribou, are found mainly in the Queen Elizabeth Islands. In contrast to the more southerly races, they occur in small, sparsely scattered groups, probably a response to the very limited food supplies on the islands.

Although these caribou lack the spectacular mass migrations typical of the barren-ground caribou, most of them use more than one island and make seasonal movements of up to several hundred kilometres between islands in spring and fall. Eglinton, Prince Patrick, and Melville Islands, and possibly others as well, must thus be considered as one unit as far as the caribou population is concerned.

Local movements also occur on individual islands. After calving in late May or early June, caribou move from the higher, inland plateaus, where they generally winter, to coastal regions, seeking new growth on drier coastal sites. They move to the interior plateaus in mid-summer, but return to the coast to mate in fall.

There are believed to be about 2000–3000 caribou on the western Queen Elizabeth Islands, mostly on Melville, Bathurst, and Prince Patrick. Eastern Melville, the Dundas Peninsula, and south-central Prince Patrick support the most caribou. There are probably a few hundred more on Devon and Ellesmere. These figures represent a drastic decrease in numbers since 1961, when about 25,000 were present. Caribou numbers on Bathurst may have declined to a point where they could easily be eliminated from the island. The decline is believed due to forage being unavailable in several years with early falls, late springs, deep snow, and ice-layering of the ground.

Traditionally, caribou were one of the most important resources supporting Inuit life, providing food and clothing. Much of that role is retained today. Hunters from Resolute obtain caribou on Somerset and Prince of Wales Islands, while Grise Fiord gets its caribou from Devon and southern Ellesmere. Hunting occurs primarily in October–November and March–May.

The muskox, a relic of the last ice age, is apparently most closely related to goats and sheep. About 2700 are found on the western Queen Elizabeths, with about 2400 of these on Melville, and smaller numbers on Bathurst, Prince Patrick, Eglinton, and Little Cornwallis. A few hundred are believed to be present on Devon, and several thousand on Ellesmere. Melville, especially the southwest part of the island (Bailey Point area), is the heartland for muskoxen on the western Queen Elizabeths. Although muskox populations on these islands increased greatly between 1961 and 1973, they had declined sharply by 1974, due

mainly to unfavourable snow and ice conditions.

There are apparently no regular large-scale seasonal movements of muskoxen between islands, but some such movements do occur. Local movements on the islands do occur regularly, however. Muskoxen prefer sedge meadows and willow slopes at low elevations. They move inland in summer, generally along watercourses and drainage slopes.

Muskoxen may be found in small groups or individually in summer, but large groups form in fall at about the time of mating and persist through winter. Such groups, built around the dominant males, have a mutual defense system, the familiar “ring,” so effective against wolves but which makes them easy to hunt with rifles. Calves are born into these groups between March and May.

Until the 1960’s, Peary caribou and muskoxen on most of the Queen Elizabeth Islands were relatively isolated from human activities, although in certain areas native hunters and white explorers had reduced their numbers. The recent population declines indicate that they may need special protection to guard against further losses or even elimination from certain areas. Although they are currently hunted by Resolute and Grise Fiord Inuit, increased hunting pressure (including the advent of sport hunting) would further endanger them. Range loss or disturbance due to human activity, particularly in winter and during or after calving, as well as obstacles preventing free movement would decrease chances for population growth.

Arctic foxes and wolves occur throughout the Arctic Islands, and although hunted and trapped by the Inuit, are generally not major components of local economies. Both species may be attracted to camps by feeding and garbage. Foxes and wolves have specific denning requirements, generally loose, relatively dry sand or gravel that can be easily excavated, making them vulnerable to destruction or prolonged disturbance in such areas.



Birds

The ice and wind scarred landscapes of the Arctic Islands sustain an unusual but varied assortment of birds, including unfamiliar species like the black guillemot or thick-billed murre along with more widely known types such as snow geese and whistling swans.

Compared to southern latitudes, bird life in these northern islands is sparse. About 640 species of birds live in Canada and the United States during at least part of the year. Of these, 65 summer in the high Arctic. Fewer than 6, including the common raven, rock ptarmigan, and the swift gyrfalcon, overwinter in the high Arctic.

Many Arctic Islands species depend on the sea for survival. They nest in colonies of hundreds and sometimes hundreds of thousands, but occupy a very small percentage of the total land and water area. Thick-billed murres, for example, are sleek, penguin-like seabirds that

inhabit both arctic and temperate regions. They nest in colonies on ledges of coastal cliffs near good fish-producing waters, which are not particularly common in the high Arctic. It is not surprising, then, that murre colonies are rare here, and that the same cliffs are used year after year and probably have been for centuries. Much the same situation applies to other seabirds — the northern fulmar, black guillemot, black-legged kittiwake, and ivory, Thayer's, and glaucous gulls — that rely on arctic seas during summer. For each, the habit of nesting in colonies near rich feeding sites has obviously proved to be an effective strategy for survival.

The large and varied flights of ducks typical of the northern prairies do not occur in the high Arctic. But what this region lacks in ducks, it makes up for in geese — particularly in snow geese which nest in immense aggregations: colonies on Baffin Island alone may contain up to

600,000 birds. This species, along with the Atlantic brant (yet another colonial nester), prefers flat coastal habitats near the mouths of large rivers.

Only a few kinds of ducks are abundant in the Arctic Islands, including the tame and colourful eiders and the aggressive oldsquaws which nest on grassy tundra. Well-vegetated tundra and river valley habitats also support a surprising selection of shore birds. Conspicuous among them are the golden plover, ruddy turnstone, northern phalarope, arctic tern, and numerous small sandpipers or "peeps." In addition, there are the acrobatic jaegers, trim, gull-like birds, skilled in the art of aerial piracy.

As one moves inland from the rocky coastlines and away from the lush lowlands and river bottoms, conditions needed to sustain bird populations grow scarce. Moist lowland soils are replaced by rocks and dry sands and gravels; vegetation thins out, ceases to cover large areas. What vegetation does grow here exists in patches that support a few birds, such as rock ptarmigan, hoary redpolls, snow buntings, and horned larks.

The chief avian predators or "raptors" of this region are the snowy owl, the gyrfalcon, and the rare peregrine falcon. Snowy owls feed mostly on lemmings and other small or medium-size mammals, including arctic hares. The two falcons, which prey mostly on birds, are said to be the fastest fliers alive, reaching speeds of 320 kilometres per

hour when diving on prey. Both species construct a meagre nest, usually in high cliffs overlooking hunting ranges, although pairs will occasionally nest on the ground. Like so many other species of the Arctic Islands, peregrines and gyrfalcons may occupy the same nesting areas for generations. Falcons are territorial and occupy home ranges that vary from 20 to 50,000 square kilometres depending on the supply of prey and numbers of acceptable nest sites. They are sensitive to outside disturbance, although this does not hold true for all individuals. Thus the Arctic Islands constitute an important breeding ground for falcons, partly because here they have not been subjected to the pressures of technological development. This is a crucial point with respect to the peregrine which continues to disappear from its traditional ranges because of human interference and pesticide poisoning. For them, the high Arctic may represent a last stand, a place where the species confronts the question of its own extinction.

The larger gyrfalcon appears to be on safer ground, protected in part by its remoteness; yet, because of its low productivity, its winter dependence on limited and fluctuating prey populations, and its stringent nesting requirements, the gyrfalcon is vulnerable to the same catastrophic decline that befell the peregrine.

In a sense, we owe many of our impressions and stereotypes of the high Arctic to the movements and habits of birds. Early explorers of this region were under-

Black-bellied plover



Male rock ptarmigan



standably impressed by the simultaneous arrival of thousands of birds and the subsequent frantic activity associated with breeding, nesting, and rearing of young. That this activity continues 24 hours a day enhances the impression of time too precious to waste. To be accurate, however, "timing" is the more appropriate word, for it is the chronology of climatic events and not the length of summer that governs bird production. This is most forcefully illustrated in years of abnormally cold or late springs. Snow geese have been known to suffer partial or total breeding failures because the land was icebound at the time of egg-laying. When this happens to colonies of half a million birds, continental populations may be depressed for several years. Other species that are psychologically tuned to breed at a specific time will be similarly affected by unseasonable conditions.

The other critical factor is space, critical because the best "space" — the most productive land — is in short supply. Major gathering places of birds may have unique or rare qualities not duplicated within hundreds of kilometres, and this makes them, the land and the birds, vulnerable to disaster. Thus, an accident that poisons a seabird fishery may force thousands of kittiwakes, gulls, murre, and guillemots to abandon their colonies or starve. Persistent human activity near an occupied peregrine aerie may cause the site to be deserted forever, and possibly result in the permanent disappearance of the resident pair from the breeding population.

All this is not to suggest that the entire Arctic Islands region is an ecological house-of-cards waiting to collapse at the slightest disturbance. But, it does illustrate where some of the sensitive points are in the Arctic Islands aviary. That we, in our search for energy and resources, are capable of decimating important bird populations goes without saying. The challenge here is not in halting development, but in developing with the care and forethought that will preserve the integrity of populations as they exist today.

Seas and Sea Ice

The Arctic Ocean, a vast expanse normally covered by ice year-round, is extremely deep. Parts of it exceed 4 kilometres, although channels between islands of the Archipelago are seldom over 500 metres deep.

Sea ice dominates the Arctic Ocean. The polar ice pack, which covers the North Pole and extends from the Canadian Arctic Archipelago to the seas off northern Siberia, has been described as the most significant surface area of the





globe for it controls the temperature of much of the northern hemisphere. The southern limit of the permanent polar pack lies just northwest of the Queen Elizabeth Islands.

Freezeup comes early in the Archipelago. By October, landfast ice or "fast ice" has formed along the shorelines of the

islands. In mid-winter, it extends many kilometres off the coast or, in narrow channels, it reaches from shore to shore. Pack ice (see box) covers the larger channels, extending between the zones of fast ice attached to island shorelines.

Breakup occurs in late spring or early summer. The snow on the sea ice melts; the temperature of the ice warms to the melting point; and flaws and cracks develop in the ice. Surface water left after the snow has melted drains through the cracks, leaving dry hummocks of white ice separated by ponds and streams of water. Much of the ice found among islands of the Archipelago breaks up during summer and melts in the area or floats south to the North Atlantic. Ice that remains is known as multi-year ice; with fall freezeup, it becomes frozen into the new ice or annual ice.

The degree of summer breakup varies throughout the Archipelago. Channels between the northern Queen Elizabeth Islands are choked with ice year-round. Lancaster Sound and eastern Barrow Strait are ice-free relatively early, but M'Clure Strait to the west has never been known to be ice-free.

Sea ice plays an important role in the lives of the Inuit who live in the Archipelago. Inter-island travel is only possible by boat during the short open-water period and by snowmobile after freezeup and before breakup. The time of freezeup is critical for groups of Inuit such as the Resolute caribou hunters, many of whom cross Barrow Strait to Somerset Island to procure their winter supply of caribou meat. They must wait until Barrow Strait is completely frozen over and is safe for travel; once across, they must finish the hunt and return before the long arctic night sets in.

Sea ice is also a key factor affecting the distribution of ringed seals and their primary predator, the polar bear. These two species, along with the small numbers of bearded seals and walrus that overwinter in the Queen Elizabeth Islands, depend on the diversity of winter ice conditions in the area.

Ice Features

Pressure Ridges

Pressure ridges develop when ice floes collide, causing the sheet to buckle, forcing up walls of broken ice. They can also develop when tides or currents cause fast ice to heave, crack, and buckle. Ridges are surprisingly solid soon after they form as a melting and refreezing process welds the blocks of ice together.

Pressure ridges as high as 20 metres have been reported off northern Ellesmere Island.

Leads and Polynias

Leads and polynias are areas of open water, anomalies in an ice-filled sea.

Leads, which are long and linear, generally develop between the fast ice and the pack ice as a result of tides, winds, and currents. They usually form late in winter or in spring and are most numerous before breakup. Polynias are generally smaller, non-linear areas that appear in narrow channels where currents are strong. Some polynias remain open throughout the winter, although most form late in spring before breakup.

Leads and polynias tend to recur in the same areas year after year. The famous

“North Water,” which recurs year after year in the northern extremities of Baffin Bay, is actually an exceptionally large polynia. In mid-winter it occupies an area of thousands of square kilometres.

Icebergs

Icebergs are large floating masses of ice that have broken off a glacier and drifted out to sea. In the Queen Elizabeth Islands, icebergs are calved off glaciers on Ellesmere, Axel Heiberg, and Devon Islands. Large icebergs can reach the size of a football field. Smaller fragments are “bergybits,” about the size of a small cottage, and “growlers,” about the size of a rowboat.

Because they originate on land, icebergs are a good source of fresh water. Grise Fiord on Ellesmere Island once depended on icebergs for its fresh-water supply.

The largest individual pieces of fresh-water ice are tabular bergs known as ice islands. These huge, floating plates of ice can be 700 square kilometres or more in area and 10 to 60 metres thick. Because of their relative durability, they have served as bases for scientific research stations.

Ice islands are usually confined to the



Pressure ridges

Arctic Ocean and have occasionally been found in channels of the Queen Elizabeth Islands. They are believed to originate from an ice shelf off the northern coast of Ellesmere Island.

Pack Ice

Pack ice is ice that forms on the sea. Such terms as ice fields, ice floes, ice cakes or pan ice, and brash are used to describe pack ice. Ice fields, the largest aggregations of pack ice, are often hundreds of square kilometres in extent. They are made up of thousands of ice chunks that are hummocked and rafted into haphazard shapes and formations. After breakup in summer, smaller aggregations such as pan ice remain.

About 80 percent of pack ice is over one year old. Known as multi-year ice, it is harder and less salty than new ice. Multi-year ice can be used as a supply of fresh water, because as it ages, the salt moves down through the ice and ultimately back into the sea.

Pack ice in the central Arctic grows to a thickness of 1 to 2 metres during the first year. The pack ice that survives the summer continues to grow, although more slowly. It may eventually reach an equilibrium thickness of about 3 metres after 5 to 8 years.



Polynia off Brooman Point, Bathurst Island

Marine Mammals

Ten species of mammals live in, or depend upon the icy waters surrounding the Arctic Islands. Of these, the whales — bowhead, narwhal, and white — live entirely within the ocean. The carnivorous seals, including the walrus and the ringed, bearded, harp, harbour, and hooded seals, are only slightly less reliant on the marine environment. These animals obtain all their food from the sea but occasionally must haul out on land or landfast ice to moult and mate. Finally, there is the polar bear, which spends most of its life wandering the pack ice in search of seals and therefore can be considered a true marine mammal. All these animals carry a thick layer of fat or blubber under their skin to insulate them from frigid water.

Three species are long-standing staples in the Inuit economy: the white whale, ringed seal, and polar bear. The others, while used and valued by the Inuit, are less important because they are not as abundant or as accessible. The bowhead whale, for instance, was formerly hunted by European whalers for its whalebone and was highly prized by the Inuit. But relentless exploitation nearly led to the bowhead's extinction; today, the bowhead population is slowly recovering.

The white whale or "beluga" (meaning whitish in Russian) is technically thought to be more closely related to the dolphins than to true whales. Each spring during May and June, about 10,000 belugas migrate west through Lancaster Sound to summering areas around Somerset Island. Unlike the rarer narwhal, which also inhabits arctic regions, the beluga is a shallow-water whale that prefers coastal inlets and bays to the deeper sounds and straits. Compared to other whales, belugas are slow swimmers and do not stay under water for long periods. Their diet is



Walruses

made up of fish and various invertebrates such as squid.

Belugas breed in spring and give birth to one and sometimes two slate-coloured young the following summer. In late July and in August, cows must bring their newborn calves into estuaries where relatively warm river water enters the sea. Here the young calves are able to survive until they develop enough insulating blubber to withstand extremely cold water. Furthermore, estuaries are rich in the fish and invertebrate life belugas feed on. For these reasons, the major calf-rearing areas such as Creswell Bay and Cunningham Inlet on Somerset Island must be protected.

White whales are no longer harvested commercially. At one time, beluga products were used as ingredients in margarine and as mink food for fur ranches. Today, white whales are still an important resource for the Inuit, providing food for men and dogs, and oil for heat and light.

The ringed seal is the most common and widespread seal in the Arctic Islands, and is a cornerstone of the traditional Inuit

way of life. Primarily solitary, they prefer waters where there is landfast ice or where winds or currents open leads in the pack ice. Such conditions prevail off Baillie-Hamilton Island where seal populations are particularly high.

In winter, ringed seals maintain breathing holes in the fast ice along cracks and pressure ridges. Pups are born on fast ice in lairs dug into snowdrifts or small caves and hollows in pressure ridges. In spring, ringed seals are found along the fast-ice edge where they feed on polar cod and haul out on the ice to moult.

The larger but much less plentiful bearded seal also occurs in the Arctic Islands and is particularly common through Crozier Strait and McDougall Sound. Large numbers of harp seals move through Lancaster Sound in June and July, but harbour and hooded seals occur only as far west as Baffin Island. The walrus, an exceptionally large type of seal, migrates west through Lancaster Sound at least as far as Bathurst Island.

In summer, most seals and walruses are found in coastal habitats. During the open water season, walruses congregate

at “haul-out” sites on floating ice or rocky beaches. Such coastal habitats have a history of long use and therefore are especially important to resident populations.

Although bearded seals and walruses are primarily migrants, small groups of them overwinter in the region, concentrating in areas where strong currents maintain polynias and areas of thin ice, such as the Penny Strait-Queens Channel-McDougall Sound area.

Polar bears are nomadic and largely solitary residents of the Arctic Islands. In winter, they frequent areas inhabited by seals (principally ringed seals), which make up the bulk of their diet; in summer, they often come ashore, gathering at the heads of bays until the ice re-forms. Pregnant females den during winter, usually in coastal areas, and give birth to tiny, hairless young before spring. When the family leaves the den

in March or April, the cubs will weigh about 9 kilograms and will remain with the female until she is ready to mate again, about two years later.

Recent tagging and tracking studies have shown that polar bears occur in fairly discrete populations, having definite seasonal ranges. Within these ranges are the key areas — the denning, feeding, and summering habitats — where human disturbance can cause the population to fare badly. Because their populations are still low and vulnerable, polar bears are carefully managed and are hunted by the Inuit on the basis of precise quotas assigned to individual settlements.

Bears that are killed by the Inuit or non-resident sportsmen rarely go to waste. The meat is used for food (the liver, being poisonous, is not eaten) and the hide is generally sold. Such benefits are offset somewhat by the dangers that polar bears pose to man (see below).

Avoiding Polar Bears

Polar bears often show little fear of man; indeed, they may wilfully approach people out of hunger, aggressiveness, or curiosity. The result may be a fatal mauling, extensive damage to property, or destruction of the bear.

It is important that newcomers to bear country protect themselves by maintaining clean, preferably enclosed camps and by thoroughly incinerating all garbage and refuse. If possible, camps should not be located on beaches; and scaring devices such as flares and propane cannons should be on hand in camps. Visitors should be aware of the threats posed by bears, and give the animals a wide berth on all occasions.

Don't feed the bears and don't be a brave photographer. If chased, throw off your

parka or pack to distract the bear. In short, when in the Arctic, expect to meet bears as you would expect cold weather and storms — and plan accordingly.



W. GRIFFITH, LGL LTD.



Fish

The Queen Elizabeth Islands do not support a great variety of fish species. Arctic char are the most important freshwater species, while marine fish such as polar cod, sculpins, and capelin form vital links in the marine food chain.

Arctic char exist in both anadromous (searun) and land-locked forms. Anadromous char weigh about 2 to 3 kilograms although they can grow to 12 kilograms; land-locked char are much smaller.

Char spawn in fall, over gravel beds in lakes and in ponds below rapids in rivers. The eggs incubate all winter and hatch in spring. Anadromous char make their first migration to feeding areas in estuaries after spending 5 to 10 years in fresh water. They migrate seaward in mid-June and return to fresh water from early August to early September.

Char are an important food of the Inuit, although in the Queen Elizabeth Islands some of the best fishing sites are inaccessible and numbers of char harvested are low. Inuit from Resolute take char from the coastal streams and small lakes of Cornwallis Island and occasionally from small lakes along the southeast coast of Bathurst Island. Char are highly valued by the Grise Fiord Inuit who fish on Ellesmere and Devon Islands.

The difficulty of travel over land restricts most char fishing in the Queen Elizabeth Islands to October and November, when the sea ice is safe for travel, and to March, April, and May, when daylight has returned and the ice and snow are still firm. Some summer char fishing occurs in streams or along coasts close to the settlements.

Stone weirs, “fences” of piled rocks, were traditionally used to trap migrating char; the char were intercepted by the Inuit waiting at the fences armed with three-pronged spears. Today, weirs have largely given way to nets, which are set at river mouths and along the coast in summer, and under lake ice in winter. Char are speared or jigged through holes in lake ice in fall and spring; in late spring they are jigged at the edge of the fast ice at river mouths. Char populations would be harmed if their spawning grounds were disturbed or fouled during fall spawning, winter incubation, and spring hatching; if their migration routes to and from the sea were blocked; or if the estuaries where they feed in summer were fouled by oil or other pollutants.

Marine fish, such as Greenland cod, sculpins, and capelin, enjoy a very low status in the Inuit culture and are not favoured as food. Sculpin and cod are jigged through small cracks in the sea ice, mostly by women and children. Capelin, which are washed ashore in summer, have been used as dog food.

Polar cod, a circumpolar marine species, is found throughout the Arctic, often along drifting pan ice or at the fast ice edge. They feed on amphipods and other crustaceans found on the underside of sea ice. Polar cod, in turn, are a favourite food of belugas and narwhals as well as ringed, bearded, and harp seals, and northern fulmars.

Marine fish species would be affected if a massive toxic fuel spill occurred. Such an event would pollute the entire marine food chain, killing marine fish directly as well as indirectly through the destruction of their food source, the animal plankton.

Man and the Cold

A central problem faced by northern newcomers involves learning how to handle the extreme cold. The cold can not only make working in the Arctic extremely uncomfortable, it can also, in various situations, threaten survival.

An initial point to appreciate is that severe cold is not as bad as many people believe. In many respects, the psychological effects of low temperatures are as important as physical ones. Sustained, extreme cold promotes depression in some people and encourages others to give up. Consequently, it is important to have a positive attitude toward dealing with the cold.

Working in the cold is more comfortable if clothing is kept clean and dry. Both wetness and dirt drastically reduce the insulating properties of any clothing. The cold can quickly turn dirty or wet clothes into a set of frozen armour.

Dry, comfortable work in the Arctic is also assisted by good ventilation of clothes. Hard work causes perspiration which will freeze inside your clothing, decreasing the effective insulation and increasing the chances of freezing. When working in a

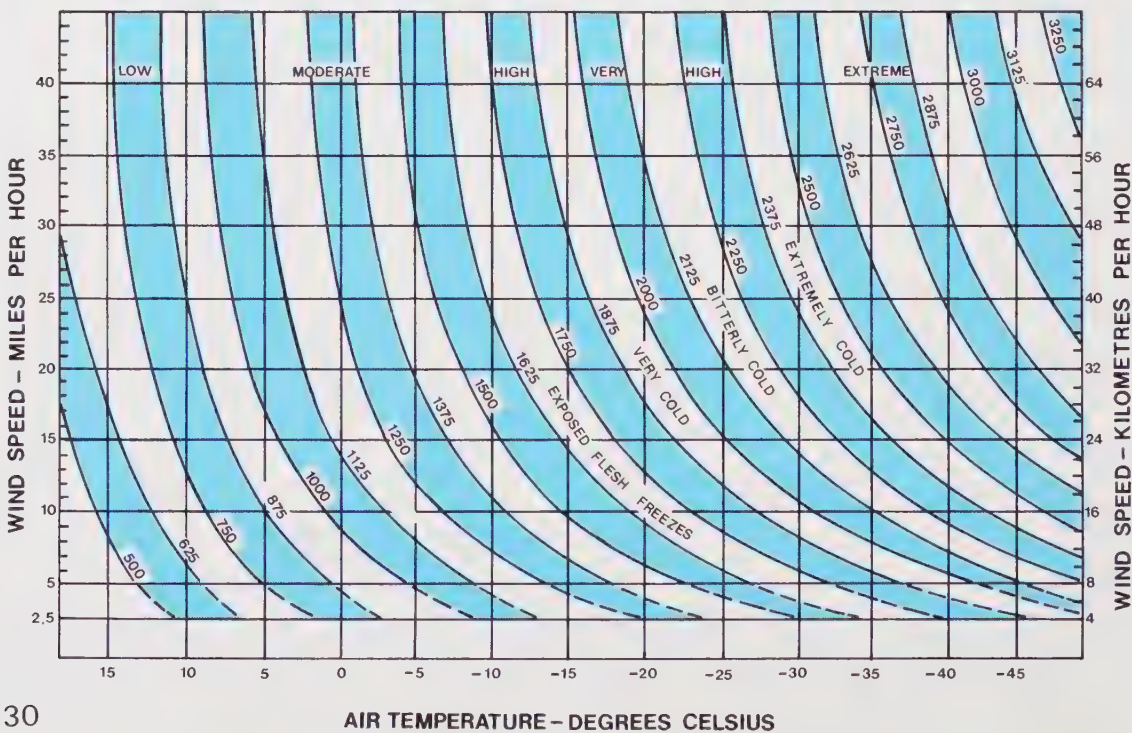
parka, drop the hood and allow the warm air around your body to escape.

The insulating quality of clothing depends largely on the existence of dead air spaces between garment surfaces as well as the air spaces within the clothing fabric. The layers of air are an effective insulation against the cold in combination with the insulation value of separate layers. Norwegian fishnet undergarments are based on this principle; their open mesh construction traps air next to the body for maximum warmth.

In the cold, everyone's body works harder to provide the energy necessary to maintain a constant body temperature. Consequently, it is essential to eat properly and regularly. Increasing the intake of high calorie foods, particularly fats, is a common strategy. So is the practice of carrying chocolate bars or candy as sources of quick energy.

In the Arctic, it is important to stay protected from the wind. Temperatures as low as -45°C are not unpleasant if there is no wind, but temperatures of -30°C with a 30-kilometre-per-hour wind are much harder to take because the wind draws heat away from the body. Whenever possible, work should proceed behind wind screens or breaks of some type.

WIND-CHILL COOLING RATES
(Watts Per Square Metre)



Arctic workers, like seamen, must be constantly aware of the threats and hazards of fire. If a fire gets started, there may be no place to go except into the cold until help arrives — if it arrives.

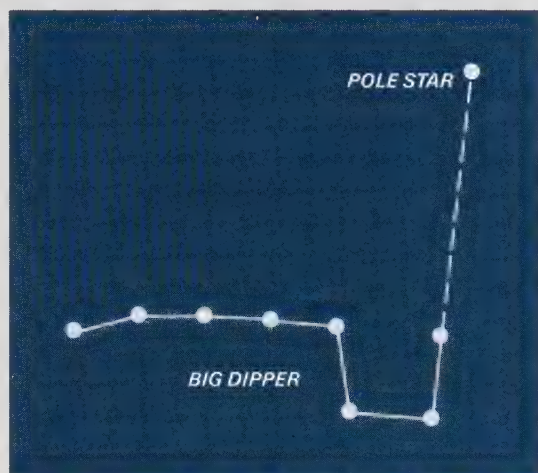
In emergency Arctic situations, the first tasks involve getting warm and protected. Cold hands are efficiently warmed when placed against the belly or genitals, while frostbite is best handled through slow warming. Simple shelters should be built in areas protected from the wind, using snow or available materials. Make a simple snow cave by digging into the side of a snowdrift. Slabs of snow can be used to close off the opening. Attempts to create elaborate structures such as igloos should be avoided because they are often unsuccessful and take lots of vital energy.

When it is necessary to seek shelter at sea, avoid towering icebergs in open water. They are always dangerous as the area below the surface melts faster than that above, causing them to topple over. Low-topped icebergs offer safer shelter. In emergency shelters, build a small fire with a reflector to direct the heat. Even a candle flame in a small enclosure can keep a man from freezing. Prevent carbon monoxide poisoning by providing good ventilation in shelters where a fire is burning.

If you are lost, do not rely on a compass for direction unless you are expert at navigating in high latitudes. The magnetic north pole is *in* the Arctic Islands and its location is constantly changing.

In emergencies, there are several ways of telling direction other than by compass. Snow drifts point in the direction of the prevailing winds which, in most parts of the Arctic, are out of the north, usually north-west or north-east. The sun can also help to determine orientation. The time of day multiplied by 15 gives a rough bearing of the sun. For example, if it is 2:00 p.m., or 1400 hours, the sun will be at 15 times 14, or 210°. At night, the easiest method is to use the pole star, which is almost directly in line with the two stars on the outer edge of the Big Dipper. Simply face the pole star and you are facing true North.

On sea ice, direction may be difficult to determine because the pack ice is constantly moved by winds and currents. Landmarks such as high pressure ridges and hummocks are usable only for short distances, since they may be located on other floes and are constantly changing location. The need for repeated checks on the sun and stars is obvious.



In attempting to attract attention, make signals that are large or highly conspicuous. Fires, flares, or mirror flashes are effective in signaling aircraft. The characters 'X' and 'SOS' also work well when stamped into the snow in letters no less than 2 metres wide and 20 metres tall.

No matter how good the shelter or preparations have been, a person requires water to survive more than a few days. If you cannot find open water, melt ice for water rather than snow; you get more water for the volume with less heat and time. At sea, the experienced Arctic traveller uses last year's ice or older for cooking and drinking. Last year's ice can be distinguished from this year's by the rounded corners which are due to the thaws of summer. It looks bluish in comparison with salty ice which is grey and milky in appearance.

Although emergency situations are rare, when they do occur they can be disastrous. In general, the best strategy involves both preparation and dedication. When travelling it is important to be prepared for the possibility of trouble. And if difficulties occur, it is important to maintain a positive attitude.



Inuk hunter dressed for -45°C weather in caribou skin parka, sheepskin pants and "mungwa," and sealskin mitts and "kamiks" (Jones Sound).

How the Inuit Dress for Warmth

The Inuk hunter wears woolen or cotton long-johns covered with baggy woolen pants and a couple of woolen jack-shirts or sweaters. Loose-fitting knee-length pants of caribou or sheepskin are worn over the cloth pants. On his feet he wears sealskin "kamiks" or boots over several pairs of woolen socks. For further protection, he can pull on a kind of overshoe ("mungwa") made of two layers of sheepskin. The wool faces inward on the inside but outward on the outer layer for improved traction. With "mungwa" over his "kamiks," a hunter's feet stay warm even at a windchill of 2750 watts per square metre — the equivalent of -40°C with a 40 kilometre-per-hour wind blowing.

Over his shirts or sweaters he wears a thigh-length parka made of a single layer of windproof cotton or a double parka made of an inner duffel parka and a windproof cotton shell. Loose-fitting waist and sleeves permit controlled release of excessive body heat and vapour produced during exertion. The hood of the parka,

which extends forward only to the cheekbones, is closed with a drawstring. It is trimmed with fur, preferably from the shoulders of a wolverine. Frost can be easily shaken from the long, irregular-length, tapered wolverine hair.

On his head, the Inuk wears a tight-fitting crocheted wool cap with a double layered band around the base to protect the ears. A tassel on top prevents the parka hood from falling too far forward over the forehead.

On his hands he wears a double pair of wrist-length mitts, the inner mitt of duffel and the outer of sheared sheepskin for maximum warmth. The mitts may be made of water-proof sealskin if he is handling fish nets or wet harpoon lines.

The hunter slips on an outer skin parka over his cloth parka for further protection if the wind picks up.

Adapted from *A Lesson on Winter Survival* by R. R. Riewe, University of Manitoba, Winnipeg (Manitoba Nature; Winter 1975).

First Aid in the Cold

The chief danger in the Arctic is freezing. Snow blindness and carbon monoxide poisoning are secondary dangers.

Frost-bite

Frost-bite refers to the freezing of the living tissue. Nose, cheeks, ears, and chin are usually the first parts of the body to be affected. Frost-bite may also affect the tips of fingers if gloves are worn instead of mitts, or feet if boots are laced too tightly.

The modern treatment for frost-bite is simply a slow warming up of the frozen areas at room temperature. Once the frost-bite has been cleared up there will be skin damage, which may result in infection. Use a bandage with sulfa powder, boracic acid, or vaseline to prevent further complications once the initial danger is over.

Hypothermia

Hypothermia describes the rapid, progressive mental and physical collapse accompanying the chilling of the vital internal organs of the human body. Caused by exposure to cold, it is aggravated by dampness, wind, and exhaustion. Symptoms include uncontrollable fits of shivering, slurred speech, and frequent stumbling. Without treatment, it may lead to stupor, collapse, and death.

Treatment is accomplished by returning the body temperature to its normal range. The best method is a hot bath and drying with a rough towel. In emergencies, the patient should be taken to a shelter and bedded down. If heating units are unavailable, strip the patient of clothing and place a naked person on each side of the

patient keeping them well covered by blankets.

Efforts to revive a frozen person should continue for several hours as persons apparently dead have been restored to life after many hours of treatment.

Snow Blindness

In the Arctic, especially in late winter and spring, there is danger of severe irritation to the eyes from the sun's rays that are either direct or reflected from snow, ice, or water. Light of unusually high intensity, with the higher-than-normal percentages of ultra-violet characteristic of northern sunlight, strikes the eye from below where it is not protected by eyelids or lashes. The only protection is to wear snow goggles that stop this light from getting through. In a pinch, eye snow shields may be improvised from wood or cloth. Even a dollar bill with small slits for the eyes will do.

Treat snow blindness by protecting the eyes from light and relieving the pain. Protect the eyes by staying in a dark shelter or by wearing a light-proof bandage. Relieve the pain by putting cold compresses on the eyes and by taking aspirin. Most cases recover within 18 hours without medical treatment.

Carbon Monoxide Poisoning

A gas resulting from incomplete combustion of fuels, carbon monoxide is very dangerous and can cause death. The first signs of carbon monoxide poisoning are usually dizziness, headache, nausea, and drowsiness. Treatment is artificial respiration if breathing has stopped and lots of fresh air.

It is hoped that those who read this booklet will be encouraged in an attitude of respect for the environment and people of the Arctic Islands. This is in keeping

with Petro-Canada's overall policy of social responsibility and of minimizing environmental disturbance while undertaking activities in the North.

Selected Reading

General

- BURNFORD, Sheila. 1973. *One woman's Arctic*. McClelland and Stewart Limited. Toronto, Ontario.
- GOVERNMENT OF THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES. *Explorers' guide*. Travel Arctic. Yellowknife, N.W.T. (Issued annually).
- KORING, Paul (editor). 1977. *Canada north almanac*. Research Institute of Northern Canada. Yellowknife, N.W.T.
- STEFANSSON, Vilhjalmur. 1943. *The friendly arctic*. Macmillan Company. London.
- STEFANSSON, Vilhjalmur. 1962. *Unsolved mysteries of the Arctic*. Macmillan Company. London.

Land and Seas

- BROWN, R. J. E. 1970. *Permafrost in Canada — Its influence on northern development*. Canadian Building Series No. 4, National Research Council. University of Toronto Press, Toronto, Ontario.
- HERRINGTON, Clyde. 1969. *Atlas of the Canadian Arctic Islands*. Shultoncraft Publishing Ltd. Vancouver, B.C.
- WILKINSON, Douglas. 1970. *The arctic coast*. The Illustrated Natural History of Canada. Natural Science of Canada Limited. Toronto, Ontario.

Plants and Animals

- IRVING, Laurence. 1972. *Arctic life of birds and mammals — including man*. Springer-Verlag. New York, N.Y.

- SLATER, John E., A. G. Ronhovde, and L. C. Van Allen. 1971. *Arctic environment and resources*. Arctic Institute of North America. Washington, D.C.
- STONEHOUSE, Bernard. 1971. *Animals of the Arctic*. Holt, Rinehart and Winston. New York, N.Y.

History

- HALL, Captain Charles Francis. 1971. *Life with the Esquimaux*. Hurtig Reprint, Hurtig Publishers. Edmonton, Alberta.
- KEATING, Bern. 1970. *The Northwest Passage from the Mathew to the Manhattan, 1497 to 1969*. Rand McNally. Chicago, Illinois.
- PRICE, Ray. 1970. *The howling Arctic*. Peter Martin Associates. Toronto, Ontario.

Survival

- COFFEY, M. F. 1956. *Aids to working in the cold*. Defence Research Board, Department of National Defence. Information Canada. Ottawa.
- D.I.A.N.D. 1972. *Northern survival*. Dept. of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, Employment and Related Services Division. Information Canada. Ottawa.
- LE BLANC, Jacques. 1975. *Man in the cold*. Charles C. Thomas. Springfield, Illinois.
- NELSON, Richard K. 1969. *The hunters of the northern ice*. University of Chicago Press. Chicago, Illinois.
- STEFANSSON, Vilhjalmur. *Arctic manual*. Macmillan Company. New York, N.Y.

Industrial Development

- ADVISORY COMMITTEE NORTHERN DEVELOPMENT. 1976. *Guidelines for scientific activities in northern Canada*. Dept. of Indian and Northern Affairs. Ottawa.
- IGLAUER, Edith. 1974. *Denison's ice road*. Clarke, Irwin & Company. Toronto, Ontario.

PIMLOTT, Douglas, D. Brown, and K. Sam. 1976. *Oil under the ice*. Canadian Arctic Resources Committee. Ottawa.

People

BERGER, Thomas R. 1977. *Northern frontier — Northern homeland*. The report of the Mackenzie Valley Pipeline Inquiry: Volume One. Supply and Services Canada. Ottawa.

BRIGGS, Jean L. 1970. *Never in anger: Portrait of an Eskimo family*. Harvard University Press. Cambridge, Mass.

BRODY, Hugh. 1975. *The people's land*. Penguin Books. Harmondsworth, England.

BRUEMMER, Fred. 1969. *The long hunt*. The Ryerson Press. Toronto, Ontario.

COWAN, Susan (editor). 1976. *We don't live in snow houses now. Reflections of Arctic Bay*. Canadian Arctic Producers Limited. Ottawa.

CROWE, Keith J. 1974. *A history of the original peoples of northern Canada*. Arctic Institute of North America. McGill-Queen's University Press. Montreal, Quebec and London, Ontario.

DAMAS, David. 1971. *The Eskimo*. Ethnology Division, National Museum of Man. Ottawa.

FREEMAN, Milton M. R. (editor). 1976. *Inuit land use and occupancy project*. Supply and Services Canada. Ottawa.

KEENLEYSIDE, David. 1975. *The land beyond*. Nelson, Foster and Scott Ltd. Toronto, Ontario.

KURELEK, William. 1976. *The last of the Arctic*. McGraw-Hill Ryerson. Toronto, Ontario.

METAYER, Maurice (editor). 1972. *Tales from the igloo*. Hurtig Publishers. Edmonton, Alberta.

O'MALLEY, Martin. 1976. *The past and future land*. Peter Martin Associates. Toronto, Ontario.

Acts and Regulations

These are some of the environmental acts and regulations which may apply to petroleum exploration and development activities in the Arctic Islands.

Arctic Waters Pollution Prevention Act
— Arctic Waters Pollution Prevention Regulations

— Arctic Shipping Pollution Prevention Regulations

Canada Shipping Act

— Air Pollution Regulations

— Garbage Pollution Prevention Regulations

— Oil Pollution Prevention Regulations

— Pollutant Substances Regulations

Clean Air Act

Environmental Contaminants Act

Expanded Guidelines for Northern Pipelines

Fisheries Act

— Northwest Territories Fishery Regulations

— Beluga, Narwhal, Seal Protection Regulations

Migratory Birds Convention Act

— Migratory Bird Regulations

— Migratory Bird Sanctuary Regulations

Northern Inland Waters Act

— Northern Inland Waters Regulations

Northwest Territories Act

— Northwest Territories Archaeological Sites Regulations

Northwest Territories Wildlife Ordinance

Ocean Dumping Control Act

— Ocean Dumping Control Regulations

Territorial Lands Act

— Canada Oil and Gas Drilling and Production Regulations

— Mining Regulations

— Territorial Land Use Regulations

Background shot to Selected Reading R R RIEWE

Back Cover / Inuk Child on Somerset Island

K. FINLEY, LGL LTD.

First Printed November 1977
Revised May 1979

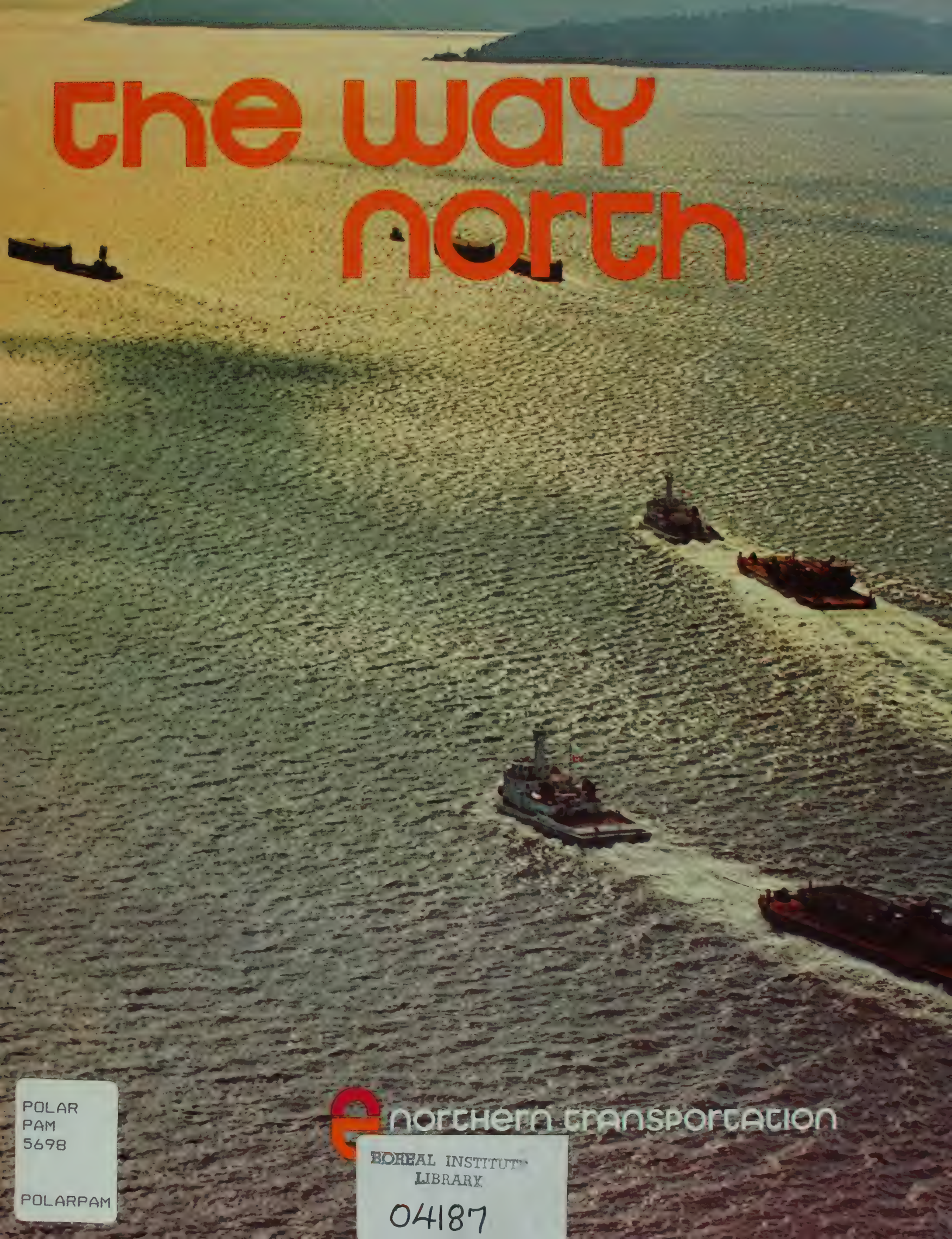


Petro-Canada

P.O. Box 2844, Calgary, Alberta T2P 2M1

(Disponible en français)

the way north



POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM



northern transportation

BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY

04187



Photos clockwise:

*Henry Christoffersen
departs Vancouver for
voyage around Alaska to
NTCL area of operations.*

*Newly launched tugs,
Henry Christoffersen,
Johnny Hope, Jock
McNiven and Matt Berry
—prior to maiden voyage.*

*Southbound tow moves
up the lower MacKenzie.*

*The way north begins
here—Hay River Island
Terminal.*

*Delta off-loading
operation demonstrates
NTCL capabilities.*

Back cover

*Angus Sherwood skirts
ice off North Slope.*







The names of the vessels, from left to right, are
The Henry Christoffersen
The Kakisa
The Angus Sherwood
The Frank Broderick
The Jock McNiven



POWER MARINE EQUIPMENT

Name of Vessel	Tonnage Gross	Horse-power	Speed in Knots	Length	Beam	Moulded Depth	Running Draft
M.V. Knut Lang	788.71	4,300	12 kts.	167' 6"	47' 9"	10' 6"	5' 6"
M.V. H. Christoffersen	783.18	4,500	13	148.4'	52.1'	9' 6"	3' 9"
M.V. Johnny Hope	782.98	4,500	13	148.3'	52.1'	9' 6"	3' 9"
M.V. Jock McNiven	776.94	4,500	13	148.3'	52.1'	9' 6"	3' 9"
M.V. Matt Berry	776.94	4,500	13	148.3'	52.1'	9' 6"	3' 9"
M.V. Vic Ingraham	711.21	4,500	13	149.6'	50.0'	9' 8"	3' 9"
M.V. Kelly Hall	669.08	4,300	12	160.0'	40.0'	10' 6"	5' 6"
M.V. Angus Sherwood	668.80	4,300	12	160.0'	40.0'	10' 6"	5' 6"
M.V. Keewatin	475.93	3,375	9	126.6'	38.1'	12' 0"	6' 6"
M.V. Radium Gilbert	296.79	926	12	113.3'	28.0'	10' 4"	5' 0"
M.V. Radium Dew	288.97	1,540	14	120.0'	30.1'	7' 0"	5' 0"
M.V. NT Husky	288.22	2,880	12	121.0'	30.0'	7' 6"	5' 0"
M.V. Radium							
Yellowknife	235.45	1,530	10	120.0'	28.0'	6' 1"	4' 0"
M.V. Radium Charles	230.05	1,530	10	111.3'	28.0'	6' 1"	4' 0"
M.V. Kakisa	203.62	1,450	10	83.0'	35.1'	7' 6"	3' 0"
M.V. Radium Trader	199.77	926	10	95.0'	28.1'	6' 1"	2' 10"
M.V. Radium Miner	199.77	926	10	95.0'	28.1'	6' 1"	2' 10"
M.V. Radium Prospector	198.80	926	10	95.0'	28.1'	6' 1"	2' 10"
M.V. NT Pelican Rapids	163.49	926	12	98.2'	28.2'	5' 6"	3' 6"
M.V. NT Marjory	160.07	680	10	74.0'	29.6'	6' 1"	3' 6"
M.V. Lister	117.20	680	10	72.0'	23.0'	6' 9"	4' 0"
M.V. Horn River	107.65	460	12	80.2'	19.8'	5' 7"	2' 8"
M.V. Radium Franklin	102.59	460	12	60.0'	24.6'	4' 6"	2' 0"
M.V. Peace	95.00	460	10	73.7'	19.7'	5' 2"	2' 6"
M.V. Radium Express	88.00	460	9	72.0'	19.8'	5' 5"	3' 0"
M.V. Watson Lake	63.36	294	10	74.9'	17.9'	4' 1"	2' 3"
M.V. Frank Broderick	2,718.00	2,880	12	280.0'	42.1'	22' 6"	5' 1"-10' 0"
M.V. Pinnebog	2,782.00	5,760	18	310.9'	48.7'	19' 9"	8' 1"-18' 0"
M.V. Banksland	509.77	500	10	166.0'	27.0'	11' 9"	7' 0"-10' 0"
Thruster	213.50	730	6	102.8'	35.1'	6' 9"	3' 6"
Thruster II	213.50	730	6	102.8'	35.1'	7' 1"	3' 6"
Thruster III	213.50	730	6	102.8'	35.1'	7' 1"	3' 6"
Thruster IV	213.50	730	6	102.8'	35.1'	7' 1"	3' 6"

NON-POWERED BARGE EQUIPMENT

Quantity	Series	Type	Light Draft	Load Maximum River	Ocean
4	1,800	Deck/Bulk	30"	—	1,876 Tons
28	1,500	Deck/Bulk	21"	1,340 Tons	2,400 Tons
24	1,000	Deck/Bulk	18"	1,030 Tons	1,240 Tons
2	800	Deck/Bulk	14"	937 Tons	1,050 Tons
1	750	Deck/Bulk	14"	849 Tons	963 Tons
37	600	Deck/Bulk	14"	600 Tons	720 Tons
1	550	Deck/Bulk	14"	463 Tons	—
17	400	House	12"	450 Tons	—
19	400	Deck	12"	450 Tons	—
3	500	House	14"	425 Tons	—
5	300	House	12"	345 Tons	—
1	800	Reefer	24"	309 Tons	—
6	200	Deck	11"	260 Tons	—
1	LL2B	Deck/Bulk	11"	142 Tons	—
5	100	Deck/Bulk	12"	135 Tons	—
1	80	Deck/Bulk	11"	100 Tons	—
1	50	Deck	12"	92 Tons	—
1	10	Deck/Bulk	11"	92 Tons	—
4	75	Deck/Bulk	11"	85 Tons	—
2	AS 1-2	Deck/Bulk	26"	—	1,037 Tons
1	AS 3	Deck/Bulk	36"	—	780 Tons
2	NTU	Utility	18"-4' 6"	500 Tons	—
2	700	24 Man Camp	2' 8"-5' 6"	—	—
2	750	Equipment/ Crane	2' 0"	—	—

TERMINAL FACILITIES

McMURRAY/WATERWAYS TERMINAL	Terminal Acreage	42 acres
Spur Line Trackage	4,400 ft.	
Warehouse Area	29,400 sq. ft.	
Wharfs	400 lineal ft.	
HAY RIVER TERMINAL	Terminal Acreage	170 acres
Spur Line Trackage	19,858 ft.	
Wharfs	4,796 lineal ft.	
Warehouse Area	26,800 sq. ft.	
Marine Maintenance Shop	200 ft. x 300 ft.	
Personnel Accommodation	176 men	
NORMAN WELLS TERMINAL	Terminal Acreage	1.6 acres
Wharfs	450 lineal ft. (I.O.L.)	
Personnel Accommodation	23 men	
BEAR RIVER TERMINAL	Terminal Acreage	176.9 acres
Airstrip (gravel)	4,800 ft.	
Wharfs (includes Franklin Landing)	393 lineal ft.	
Personnel Accommodation	39 men	
The marine equipment is supplemented by the following mechanical shore loading equipment:		
Fork Lifts A modern fleet of 132 units including track and four wheel driven fork lifts, with a capacity range from 2 to 40 tons.		
Cranes Seven mobile and crawler cranes with capacities from 10 tons up to 200 tons.		
Local cartage equipment includes various sizes of truck tractors, 14', 20', and 50' heated vans, lowboys, oilfield floats, winch trucks, ISO containers, etc.		
INUVIK TERMINAL	Terminal Acreage	51 acres
Wharfs	472 lineal ft.	
Warehouse Area	16,800 sq. ft.	
Personnel Accommodation	75 men	
TUKTOYAKTUK TRANS SHIPPING TERMINAL	Terminal Acreage	112 acres
Wharfs	1,100 lineal ft.	
Warehouse Area	17,080 sq. ft.	
Personnel Accommodation	75 men	
BUSHELL TERMINAL (URANIUM CITY)	Terminal Acreage	2.7 acres
Wharfs	400 lineal ft.	
Warehouse Area	18,080 sq. ft.	
Personnel Accommodation	22 men	

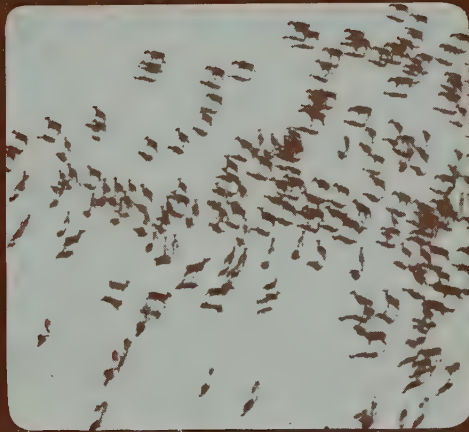
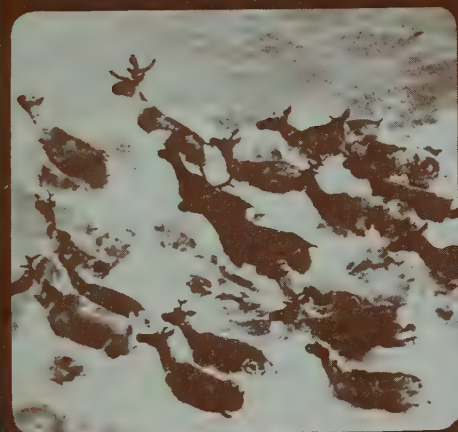


nORTHERN TRANSPORTATION CO. LTD.

Head Office: 9945 - 108 Street, Edmonton, Alberta T5K 2G9
Telephone: (403) 423-9201 Telex: 037-2480

Calgary Sales Office: 540 - 5th Avenue S.W., Calgary, Alberta T2P 0M2
Telephone: (403) 265-4047 Telex: 038-24661

Winnipeg Sales Office: 77 Main Street, Winnipeg, Manitoba R3C 2R1
Telephone: (204) 943-7401 Telex: 075-87745



Caribou of the N.W.T.

Like an endless swelling river, herds of barren-ground caribou flow across the tundra ... dominating the landscape and the lives of the people who hunt them.

The mysterious migration is one part of the annual cycle of the barren-ground caribou. It begins on bleak winter ranges. Small groups paw the ground in search of food. Their excellent sense of smell leads them to lichens under the snow. Their broad, sharp-edged hoofs easily clear the snow from the lichen patches.

Warm hollow-haired coats protect the caribou from extreme temperatures. Even the muzzle and tail are well furred to keep out the cold.

In April and May, led by females and yearlings, the caribou move towards traditional calving grounds. During a one week period in early June most of the calves are born. Only hours after birth they are on their feet and nursing. Two weeks later they are grazing. And six weeks after birth the calves have doubled in size.

About 90 percent of the cows produce calves annually but in years of bad weather many calves die, victims of pneumonia or other sicknesses caused by the biting cold, the wind, rain or snow.

Shortly after calving the caribou form into groups again to continue their migration. In early summer they travel up to 24 km daily ... seeking food ... escaping insects and predators.

The wolf is the natural predator of the caribou. To satisfy its food requirements one wolf may kill over 14 caribou a year. Often the caribou wolves kill are old or injured ... or young animals.

By the first frost of August caribou groups are breaking up. Mating season occurs in late October and early November, then, in small groups, the caribou return to their winter range to begin the cycle once again.

Barren-ground caribou are brown with a prominent white neck. Parts of the flank and rump, belly and muzzle are also white. An average bull weighs about 145 kg and adult cows average 90 kg.

Barren-ground caribou are not as large as woodland caribou found in the southwestern section of the territories, but are larger than the Peary caribou living on the islands of the high Arctic.

BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY

04187



Woodland caribou do not form into migrating herds since groups travel only short distances to calving grounds or wintering grounds. Peary caribou migrate, but over shorter distances than barren-ground caribou.

Originally there were probably two to three million barren-ground caribou. The decline in numbers started when white men first arrived in the north with rifles. By the mid-1950s government surveys estimated the total barren-ground population at 280,000. The most recent estimates put the population at 400,000.

The Beverly herd is located in central NWT, ranging from the east side of Great Slave Lake and Lake Athabasca in Saskatchewan to the Back River northwest of Baker Lake. The Bathurst herd is found in an area just west of the Beverly herd. The populations of both these herds is estimated at 90,000 each.

The Bluenose herd, whose range extends from Great Bear Lake to the Arctic coast, numbers less than 90,000; while the Porcupine herd, which crosses from the NWT into Yukon and Alaska at the northwest section of the Territories, numbers about 110,000.

Finding and counting the major NWT herds is one of the jobs of the biologists with the NWT Wildlife Service. They map migration routes, study the habits of the caribou and count calves and adults to find out whether the herds are increasing or decreasing.

They count caribou while flying in straight lines, called transects, over calving grounds. The number of animals counted in one transect and other information about the habits of the caribou are applied to mathematical formulae to obtain a fairly accurate estimate of the population of a herd.

This information is necessary for management.

For hundreds of years caribou have been used for food and clothing by the people of the north. This process continues today with NWT general hunting licence holders allowed to hunt without restriction or quota. However, people are encouraged to take no more than they can use in order to prevent wastages which have occurred in the past and to ensure the caribou survive to be hunted by our children and grandchildren.

The Kaminuriak Herd

The Kaminuriak herd, ranging from northern Manitoba to Chesterfield Inlet, was once one of the great caribou herds in the North.

Today it is less than half its former size. Biologists first noted a decline in 1968 when a survey indicated that the herd, once estimated to be over 100,000, had dropped to 63,000 animals. Now there are less than 40,000 caribou in the Kaminuriak herd.

Caribou herds tend to increase or decrease naturally. Range conditions, weather, calving rates and wolf kills all have an effect.

Biological surveys show that the Kaminuriak herd could increase by 10 percent each year. This figure represents the number of calves which survive their first year. In numbers, about 4,000 animals could be added to the herd this year.

If no caribou were hunted and no caribou died naturally, the total population of the herd next year could be 44,000.

But animals do die naturally. Some animals die of disease, accidents and old age, while many are killed by wolves.

Man also affects the size of the herd. The recorded hunter kills in the Kaminuriak herd in 1979 were about 4,500. If man continues to kill this many caribou, and if survival and natural death rates do not change, then



the herd will probably decrease to less than 10,000 animals in the next 10 years.

A similar drastic decline occurred in an Alaskan herd in the 1880s. Eventually there were so few animals that the hunters moved elsewhere in search of food. A 50 year separation of man and caribou followed ... allowing the herd to rebuild to its former size.

Today the Kaminuriak herd cannot hide from man. Not even for one year. Certainly not for 50 years. The Inuit have moved to communities close to migration routes and calving grounds. Weekend hunters can travel by aircraft and skidoo. Hunters with high powered rifles can kill so quickly that sometimes it is not possible to take all the meat home. Sometimes caribou meat is wasted out on the land.

There are ways to halt the decline of the Kaminuriak herd. The government could impose community quotas just as they did in Alaska in 1977 when the Western Arctic caribou herd began to decline.

The NWT Wildlife Service would prefer that hunters limit their own kill. If hunters took only 900 animals rather than 4,500, biologists think the Kaminuriak herd could grow larger.

ΔΥΚΑΔΑΔΕΙΟΝ...
ΛΕΓΕΤΑΙ ΔΕ ΤΟ ΕΛΕΥΘΕΡΙΟΝ

ΔΥΚΑΔΑΔΕΙΟΝ...
ΛΕΓΕΤΑΙ ΔΕ ΤΟ ΕΛΕΥΘΕΡΙΟΝ

Hunters in the NWT have restricted their hunting of caribou before. After caribou were airlifted to South-ampton Island in 1967 people agreed not to hunt them for 10 years. Working with wildlife managers, they assisted in protecting the herd, so it can sustain limited hunting today.

Man is not the only predator. Wolves cause many of the deaths in the herd. Reducing the number of wolves on the range could help reverse the downhill trend of the Kaminuriak herd.

Human disturbances of caribou on migration routes and calving grounds could affect the survival of calves. But protective measures to prevent such disturbances are now in force. Exploration work is stopped near calving areas in calving season. Workers are moved away from migration routes when they are in use. Aircraft are restricted in flight routes over the caribou range.

Exploration activity can no longer be considered a cause for the decline in the Kaminuriak herd.

If hunters reduce their kill and ensure that no meat is wasted, the caribou population will have a better chance to increase again.

Only through the joint efforts of the hunters' and trappers' associations, the Wildlife Service and the people of the Keewatin, can the Kaminuriak herd regain its position as one of the great herds in the Northwest Territories.



Archaeological Resources of The Northwest Territories

POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM



BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY

04187

Archaeological Resources of The N.W.T.

Men have lived in the N.W.T. for more than 10,000 years. These early inhabitants first opened up the country, gradually developing a way of life which allowed them to survive in areas which most would consider uninhabitable. As they moved about the land following the migrating caribou or establishing camps at dependable hunting and fishing spots, they left behind traces of their way of life in the form of dwellings, lost tools and other refuse. Some of these traces remain today as a record of the distant past: a few chips of stone or bone tools scattered

on the surface of a sandy terrace, a group of tent-rings along an old beach, or a stone grave surrounded by the belongings of the person buried.

Men of a later day, within the period of known events, have also traversed the mainland, islands and waterways of the North. They, too, left remains and evidence of their passing. To the competent archaeologist of today both prehistoric and historic archaeological sites are vitally important aids in helping to reveal the unknown history of the North and in confirming and supporting points of history.

Archaeological sites in the N.W.T. are fairly rare and the Government of the N.W.T. takes an active interest in their preservation for scientific study.

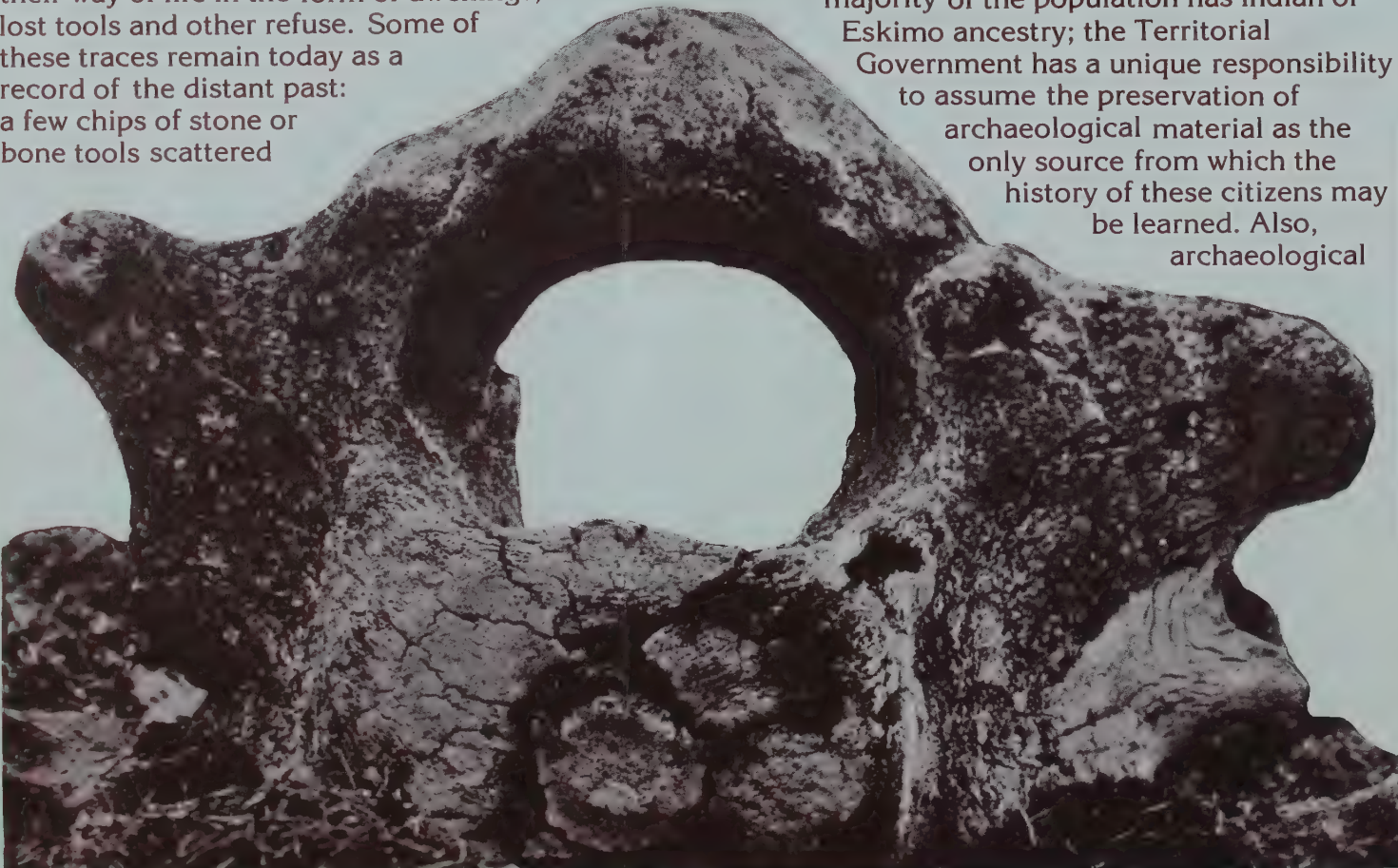
The N.W.T. is unique in Canada in that the majority of the population has Indian or Eskimo ancestry; the Territorial Government has a unique responsibility to assume the preservation of archaeological material as the only source from which the history of these citizens may be learned. Also, archaeological

sites may be developed as points of interest for citizens and for visitors to the N.W.T. Finally, the destruction of sites and the removal of archaeological material is prohibited under the Northwest Territories Archaeological Site Regulations (SOR/60-31).

Citizens of the N.W.T., operators of commercial enterprises, and visitors may assist the Territorial Government in the following ways:

- A. Report any archaeological site which you notice, to Secretary, N.W.T. Heritage Council, Government of the N.W.T., Yellowknife, N.W.T. The following information would be useful:
 - (1) Location of the site, on a topographical map if possible, or with relation to rivers, roads etc.
 - (2) What does the site look like; is it buried or on the surface; are there any structures and if so what do they resemble? Photographs are very useful.
 - (3) Is the site near a good hunting or fishing spot; in your opinion, why was the site located where it is?
- B. Do not disturb the site in any way. Do not collect any material from the site unless that material is in danger of being destroyed; for instance, material may be washed out of a riverbank, or it may be in the path of road construction. Any material collected in this way should be turned over to the N.W.T. Heritage Council.

The Government of the N.W.T. hopes for co-operation in preserving its slender archaeological resources, and thus preserving the chances of some day knowing more about the early occupants of the Territories.



Outline of N.W.T. Prehistory

12-10,000 years ago: The glaciers which covered most of the N.W.T. during the last ice age began to retreat toward Hudson Bay. At some time earlier than this the ancestors of the American Indians had entered Alaska from Siberia and moved south to central North America, probably through ice-free corridors along the mountains.

10-8,000 years ago: The Mackenzie River area, Great Slave and Great Bear Lakes, and the western Arctic coast were free of ice. Small bands of Indians, probably closely related to the buffalo-hunters who occupied the Plains area at that time, moved into the ice-free land and followed the migrating caribou north as far as the Arctic coast.

8-6,000 years ago: The last remnants of the glaciers finally melted, probably in the vicinity of Hudson Bay. The forest became established close to its present position as the climate became warmer. In the forest area various groups of Indians began to develop hunting and fishing patterns which allowed them to live under the new conditions; some still followed the caribou into the tundra during the summer, but probably returned to winter in the forest where fuel and game were available.



6-4,000 years ago: The ancestors of the Eskimo crossed to Alaska from Siberia and began moving eastward across the Canadian Arctic. These people learned how to hunt sea mammals, especially the seal, and this technique provided winter food and fuel which allowed them to winter on the Arctic tundra.

4-1,000 years ago: Indian cultures continued to develop in the forest zone. The tundra zone of the Canadian Arctic was occupied by an Eskimo people who appear to have become extinct about 1,000 years ago.

1,000 years ago-present: The ancestors of the various Indian groups became established in the areas which they presently occupy. A new wave of Eskimo people moved eastward from Alaska, encouraged by a milder climate and the invention of techniques which allowed them to kill whales. The descendants of these people, reduced by a period of harsh climate about 300 years ago, are the present Eskimos of the N.W.T.

Museums & Historical Sites
Department of Natural & Cultural Affairs

Published by the Department of Information,
Government of the Northwest Territories.
9/77



Department of Education

vocational
and
higher
education

POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM



**BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY**

04187

GOVERNMENT OF THE NORTHWEST TERRITORIES
CANADA

P.O. BOX 600, FORT SMITH, N.W.T. X0E 0P0



THE PROGRAM

This is a two-year program, designed to provide the graduate with the skills required to meet the growing demand for technicians and managers in the area of renewable resource utilization.

Renewable resources include lands, waters, forests, wildlife and fisheries. Wise use of these resources ensures continued enjoyment of resource-based activities such as trapping, sport and domestic hunting and fishing, and outdoor recreation. These resources will continue to play a commanding role in the economy of the north long after the non-renewable resources of gas, oil, and minerals have been depleted.

Because the renewable resources of the north have unique aspects, and sometimes unusual fragility, they deserve the best technological research and management that can be applied. They will be cared for best when this research and management is provided by people who have a lifelong personal investment in the north and its resources.

To these ends, the Renewable Resources Technology Program has been developed to train northerners to fill the needs of the public and private sector, for employees at the technician/technologist level.



ACCOMMODATION

Accommodation for students is arranged for them by the Department and is based on needs. Modest rents or room and board rates are deducted from student allowances.

COURSE DESCRIPTION

The program offers a balance of classroom instruction, laboratory study and field experience consisting of five semesters. Three four-week field camps are included in the program. Those students not requiring the academic upgrading and introductory courses of the first semester begin the program in August with the introductory field camp.

FIRST SEMESTER

JANUARY TO AUGUST

1. FOR EASTERN ARCTIC STUDENTS

LOCATION: Frobisher Bay and field camp at Winton Bay, Baffin Island

Includes:

- Academic Upgrading as required in Mathematics, English and Biology
- Introductory Courses in surveying, mapping, aerial photo interpretation, report writing, and maintenance of field notes and diaries
- Geography/Geology, Botany and Zoology as related to the Eastern Arctic
- a four-week field camp in August: **Arctic Marine Camp** at Winton Bay, Baffin Island, dealing with arctic ecosystems, geology, mammalogy, marine fisheries and navigation, and mountain and glacial travel and rescue

2. FOR STUDENTS OTHER THAN EASTERN ARCTIC STUDENTS

LOCATION: community nearest home of student and field camp at Tsu Lake, near Fort Smith

Includes:

- Academic Upgrading as required in Mathematics, English and Biology
- a four-week introductory field camp in August: **Boreal Camp** at Tsu Lake, near Fort Smith, dealing with an introduction to renewable resources, biological systems, geology, land use, outdoor skills, and wildlife studies.

SECOND SEMESTER

SEPTEMBER TO DECEMBER

Includes:

- written communications
- drafting and mapping
- forest and range botany
- fire science 1
- geology and soils
- first aid and survival training
- mathematics review

THIRD SEMESTER

JANUARY TO APRIL

Includes:

- oral communications
- photogrammetry and mapping
- wildlife biology
- forest mensuration
- ecology
- parks: introduction
- fire science 2
- mathematics review

FOURTH SEMESTER

AUGUST TO DECEMBER

LOCATION: field camp and on campus in Fort Smith

- Includes:
- a four-week **field camp** in August - either Arctic Marine Camp or Boreal Camp, whichever has not been attended previously (see first semester)
 - mathematics - applied statistics
 - wildlife techniques
 - water resources management
 - parks: planning and design
 - surveying
 - environmental law
 - marine fisheries: biology and management
 - special project



FIFTH SEMESTER

JANUARY TO APRIL

LOCATION: on campus in Fort Smith and field camp in Yukon Baffin Island

- Includes:
- wildlife management
 - parks: operation, maintenance and administration
 - administration and supervision
 - law enforcement
 - freshwater fisheries: biology and management
 - general forestry
 - anthropology
 - native land claims
 - special project
 - **Field Practicum** at various locations in the Yukon Territory or Baffin Island dealing with alpine terrain and ecosystems

WHO IS ELIGIBLE FOR THE PROGRAM?

Applicants wishing to enroll in the Renewable Resources Technology Program should be at least 17 years of age and have a Grade 12 graduation diploma. Preference will be given to students with the following credits: Math 30 or 33, Biology 30, English 33, Chemistry 20, and Physics 10. Mature students with a GED Grade 12 certificate may also apply to the program. Applicants not meeting these requirements will be considered for Semester 1 of the program. Upon successful completion of Semester 1, the student may continue with the remainder of the program. All applicants should have demonstrated a keen interest in the outdoors, must be in good physical condition, and be able to pass a medical examination prior to final acceptance. In addition, an applicant must be a resident who has lived north of the 60th parallel for at least 10 years.



EMPLOYMENT OPPORTUNITIES

Graduates of the Renewable Resources Technology Program are qualified for employment opportunities with the federal and territorial governments as well as with private industry. Their specific training provides technical and managerial skills in the areas of land use, forestry, fire control, surveying, water management, fisheries, wildlife and parks.

The goal of the program is to place graduates in employment in these areas. A survey of potential employers indicates that current demand is much greater than the supply of graduates.

OTHER EDUCATIONAL PROGRAMS AVAILABLE THROUGH VOCATIONAL AND HIGHER EDUCATION

Clerk-Typing
Carpentry
Electronic Technician
Welding
Teacher Education

Small Business Management
Cook Training
Mechanics
Heavy Equipment Operation
Renewable Resources



FOR FURTHER INFORMATION

Persons interested in applying for this program should contact their high school counsellor, local adult educator, settlement secretary, education office, or Canada Employment Centre.

Application forms and further information on financial assistance, accommodation and other student services are available from the above or by contacting:

**THE REGISTRAR,
VOCATIONAL AND HIGHER EDUCATION
P.O. BOX 600
FORT SMITH, N.W.T.
XOE OPO**

Applications for the full first semester should be submitted by December 1 for selection of candidates to start January 15. Other applications must be received by February 1. Selection of these candidates will be made by April 1, for introductory field camp in August.

Frobisher's Firsts



(MARTIN FR
From the Po

**BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY**

04187

POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM

Frobisher's Firsts

Sir Martin Frobisher. The name conjures up visions of "Merchant Adventurers" who sailed the seas in the first Elizabethan era in search of unknown regions beyond the horizons. Men dreamed, struggled, suffered and died searching for a Northwest Passage to the riches of Cathay and the Indies.

Martin Frobisher was one of the first English explorers who endeavoured to find a commercially profitable route to the east. It has been said "that after fifteen years of assiduous assertion on his part Frobisher first gave national character to the search for the Northwest Passage by bringing all the most eminent interests in the country — political and aristocratic, scientific and commercial — to bear on this enterprise".

At times a buccaneer, pirate, soldier and explorer, he led three expeditions to the Eastern Arctic. On the first, in 1576, commissioned by Queen Elizabeth I, he set sail in early June with three small vessels, the 25-ton *Michael*, the 20-ton *Gabriel* and a pinnacle of under 10 tons. Sailing down the Thames and firing a royal salute, Frobisher and his crew received an encouraging wave from the Queen watching from a palace window in Greenwich.

Battered by storms, they reached the coast of Greenland by July 11. The *Gabriel* was damaged; the pinnacle and its crew were lost; and the *Michael* returned home. But Frobisher pushed on westward to what is now known as southern Baffin Island. Here he discovered a broad channel and sailed into it more than 100 miles. Believing it to be the passage dividing two continents, on the right Asia and on the left America, he named it Frobisher Strait.

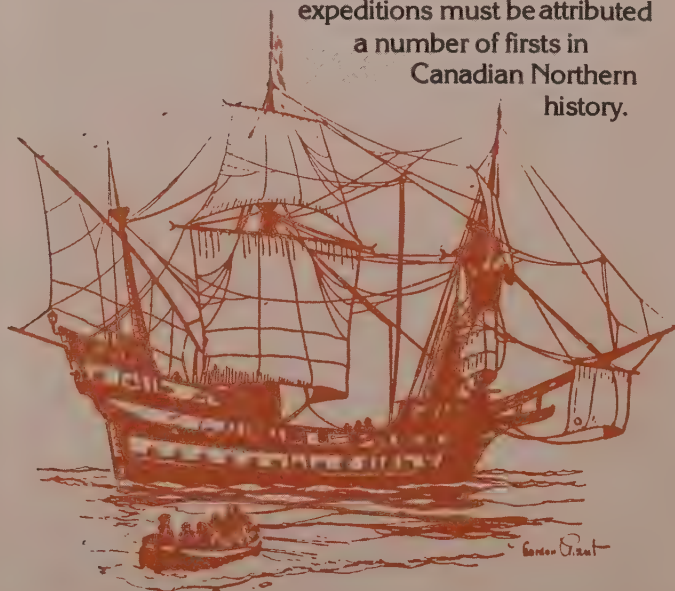
In Search of Gold

Two more voyages to this region followed in 1577 and 1578 but these were in search of gold. Ore found on the 1576 voyage was thought in England to contain gold. On an island now known as Kodlunarn near the mouth of Frobisher Bay, approximately 150 miles from the present community of that name, he dug some 2,000 tons of rock in two seasons. Loading what he could of the ore in 1577 in three small ships, he sailed home.

His last voyage in 1578 was for more ore. Fifteen vessels were involved in this expedition. He found the opening that is now Hudson Strait before turning north to his previous landfall. Encountering extremely bad weather and treacherous ice, he lost ships, supplies and about 40 men before the remainder of the fleet reached home that fall, well-burdened with ore.

Further examination disclosed that the black rock contained only worthless glinting flecks of botite mica verifying the old proverb "All is not gold that shineth". Thus ended Frobisher's exploring career.

To Sir Martin Frobisher and others in his three expeditions must be attributed a number of firsts in Canadian Northern history.



For instance, the "fools gold" touched off Canada's first gold rush and mining venture.

And Council, which met in 1578 under Frobisher on board the 200 ton Flagship *Ayde*, was the first law-making body known to sit in any part of the Northwest Territories. The Council discussed the expedition's situation and set out regulations covering activities. It was the forerunner of today's Legislative Assembly of the Northwest Territories. Some of the regulations deal with problems we are still struggling with more than 400 years later such as pollution and public health.

A plan to establish a northern community of 100 men to mine the ore ended with the sinking of the 100-ton barque *Dennis*. She carried part of the timbers of a large prefabricated house "artificially framed and cunningly devised by a notable learned man at home". This was probably the earliest Arctic Prefab house ever shipped north.

The Earliest Arctic Colonists

Even with the salvaged material available, the short construction season would not allow time to erect a structure. The general and his council agreed that no habitation should be built there that year. They did decide, however, to build a small house of lime and stone on Countess of Warwick Island, which the Inuit now call Kodlunarn Island, the place the white man dug for ore.

In addition, orders were to bury the remaining timbers intended for the colony with "many barrels of meale, peafes, grifte, and fundrie other good things". The optimistic colonists also sowed some peas and corn and other grain in the tundra terrain. This has to be the first attempt

at Northwest Territories agriculture.

The stone house has practically disappeared but the nearby trenches where men dug the worthless ore and where they repaired their vessels can still be seen.

Among the impressive roster of Firsts was the earliest recorded North American celebration of Holy Communion according to the Anglican Rite. This service was conducted by Chaplain Robert Wolfal in late August 1578 on a site on Baffin Island known to the explorers as Winter's Furnace. In addition to his work with the proposed colonists, Rev. Mr. Wolfal, the first Arctic missionary, had hoped to bring the gospel to the Inuit.

Frobisher's first two expeditions had met strange people who dressed in furs and travelled in "leather botes". "They be like Tartars with long black hair, broad faces, and flatte noses The women are marked in the face with blewe streakes"

He Preached a Godly Service

No doubt because of the experiences with the Inuit the previous two voyages they were wary and contact was not made. Master Wolfal, however, kept busy and the chronicles relate (with a modification to modern spelling) that "Master Wolfal preached a godly service on Winter's Furnace and then celebrated a communion upon the land. This was attended by Captain Best of the *Anne Francis* and many other gentlemen, soldiers, sailors, and miners. This celebration of divine mystery was the first sign, seal and confirmation of Christ's name, death and passion ever known in these parts or this side of the water. Master Wolfal also preached sermons and celebrated communion at many other times in

various ships because the whole company could never meet together at any one place".

Probably most important of all the firsts resulting from the Frobisher voyages are the accounts and descriptions of this initial European contact with the Inuit. The ancient sites he found reflected an even older story of men's struggle to survive in the Polar Regions before the Europeans came. The ancestors of the Inuit Frobisher met had hunted in these regions some four thousand years before. Unfortunately, the encounters for both groups were not happy.

There were, of course, cultural and language differences. At this time the Europeans themselves were going through a transition in their technology and social structure. Nor was there the social conscience of today's more enlightened society. However, Frobisher gave the world insight into the Inuit and he learned to respect their skill and strength.

So strong and reliable is the oral tradition among the Inuit of Iqaluit (Frobisher Bay) that when the next explorer, Charles Francis Hall, came to this Bay in 1861 they could recall in detail the historic meetings with Frobisher. That was 300 years later.

Suspicion On Both Sides

Even with a suspicion on both sides during the 1576 expedition, there were sometimes friendly meetings with the Inuit. The local people from time to time came aboard the *Gabriel*.

Another milestone was the trading that took place, the crews bartering mirrors and needles for sealskins and bearskins. A cultural exchange was also made in tasting each other's food and the Inuit climbed the *Gabriel's* rigging with great agility competing with the sailors at acrobatics. Unfortunately, the situation deteriorated and misunderstandings increased.

We are indebted to artist John White, who was aboard the *Ayde* in 1577, for the first European paintings of the Inuit. Depicted in the paintings, clothing designs, which changed little over the centuries, reflect a well thought out style to meet the Arctic environment.

Captain Christopher Hall, master in the *Gabriel* on the 1576 voyage also prepared the first written Inuit vocabulary of the Meta Ingcognita people as Europeans had named the land of Frobisher's Straits. Most of the words, even with the English spelling of four centuries ago, are recognizable — again the amazing oral Inuit tradition being passed down through generations.

For a while Frobisher's reputation declined but in later years he reached new heights of glory. He became vice-admiral to Sir Francis Drake and was knighted for his service in the 1588 defeat of the Spanish Armada. On November 22, 1594 at age fifty-five Sir Martin Frobisher died of wounds received when leading an attack on the Spanish garrison at Brest.

Although Frobisher's three Arctic expeditions may be considered an economic failure in light of the "fools gold" fiasco, the venturesome voyages and the related firsts are a prodigious part of Canada's rich northern history and heritage.

Hamlet of

Rae-Edzo



POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM

BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY

Northwest
Territories

04187

Rae-Edzo

Fort Rae is the largest Dene community in the Northwest Territories, with a population of approximately 1600 Dogrib Indian people. In addition, there is a minimal Metis and white population.

Fort Rae and Edzo are situated on Marion Lake, an extension of the north arm of Great Slave Lake. Edzo, built by the government in 1970, is located on the Mackenzie Highway about 880 miles north of Edmonton, while Rae is seven miles off the highway on the north shore of Marion Lake. The community is approximately 65 miles from Yellowknife, the capital of the Northwest Territories.



The present location of Fort Rae originated in 1904 when the people began to settle because of the establishment of a trading post. Prior to 1904, Rae was located at Old Fort, on the shoreline of Great Slave Lake. [See map.]

The community has grown steadily as people gradually moved in from the bush, where they lived a nomadic lifestyle, following the game on a seasonal basis. Now most families remain in town so their children can attend school, while members of the family travel to fishing camps, hunting grounds and traplines seasonally.

Fish are plentiful in Marion Lake and Frank Channel, so the people set nets in both the summer and under



the ice in the winter. Fur bearing animals are plentiful in the region, with muskrat, lynx, rabbit, fox, mink, moose and black bear being common.

As well, a variety of bird species are commonly spotted in the area. In driving the 65 miles to Yellowknife, it is not uncommon to encounter over 30 different species, everything from the bald eagle to a black headed seagull.

Caribou used to migrate into the settlement in the early years of Rae. In fact, the people used to hunt them in the channel while they were swimming between Bay Island and the mainland. However, as the settlement became permanent and the highway was constructed the caribou moved off further to the north.



The traditional activities of hunting and trapping continue to contribute extensively to the economy of the region. The majority of people participate either full time or for those who have permanent jobs, on a part time basis.

The community is governed by both a Hamlet Council, which looks after the municipal responsibilities and a Band Council, which gives leadership in political, development and cultural affairs. Both councils are elected. To provide continuity, the membership on the councils overlaps.

In addition, the community has a local Housing Association which manages the rental houses as an agent of the NWT Housing Corporation.

Health services are provided by the Department of Health and Welfare Canada, which operates a cottage hospital in Edzo and a medical clinic in Rae. They employ a permanent doctor.

The community has one church, St. Michael's Roman Catholic Church which plays an important role in the lives of the Dogrib people, who maintain deep spiritual beliefs. Historically, the role of the mission has

changed as the government has taken more responsibility in providing services, such as the hospital. Until 1975 the church operated the Faraud Hall in Rae.

Rae-Edzo was the first native community in the Northwest Territories to have its own incorporated School Society which functions as a Board. The members are elected for one year terms of office and carry the responsibility of hiring staff and developing a curriculum that meets the needs of the Dogrib people.

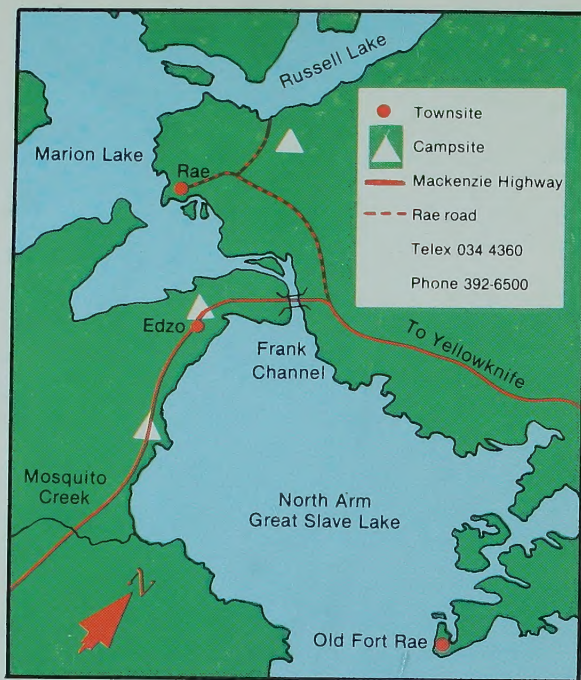
Chief Jimmy Bruneau School provides education from grade nine in both Dogrib and English. The students complete their secondary school education in Yellowknife.

There are a number of active local organizations which provide a variety of services to the community. The Bechoo Kho Radio Society broadcasts a one hour bilingual program daily in affiliation with CBC. There is also an Exhibition Association which provides recreation programs during the summer and manages the Community Hall.



Photo Credits:

Ivan Fraser
Rene Fumoleau
Jean Pochat
Patrick Scott



Community Services

General Stores:

The Bay, Arnie's General Store

Gasoline:

Arnie's General Store, Rae Cafe, J.B. Gas Bar

Restaurant:

Rae Cafe

Transportation:

Frame and Perkins provides bus services from Yellowknife, Monday, Wednesday and Friday.

Canadian Coachways System provides services both from Yellowknife and from southern locations.

Dogrib Air provides charter air service on request, flying Cessna 185 and Beaver aircraft.

Radio:

CBC and Becho Kho: 1200 kHz

Liquor:

As a result of a community plebiscite, alcohol is prohibited within a radius of 24 km (15 miles) around the community. Travellers may have sealed alcohol in their luggage.

Dogrib Legend



A young woman of the Yellowknife tribe lived with her brothers, for she had no husband. One day a handsome young stranger came to the house and stayed for several days. The brothers said to their sister, "This handsome man has come for you, so you must marry him." So the couple were married.

That night the couple slept together. During the night the young woman woke and realized her husband was no longer in bed with her. "Where has my husband gone?" she wondered. Suddenly she could hear a dog gnawing on a bone but couldn't see anything because the fire was out.

"Whose dog is that," she said to herself, "we have no dog." Quickly she jumped out of bed and lit the fire but there was no dog to be seen. She went back to bed and fell asleep.

Again she was awakened by the noise of a dog gnawing on a bone. "How come there's a dog in our tent, we don't own a dog," she said again. One of her brothers, who had also been awakened, grabbed his hatchet and threw it in the direction of the noise. Suddenly there was a loud cry and then silence. Quickly they lit the fire again and found a huge black dog lying dead. From that moment on, the stranger was never seen again.

"So this creature was by day a man and our sister's husband, and at night he became a dog. He deceived us all," said her brothers.

They abandoned their young sister because she had slept with this creature who was both man and dog and cast her out without pity.

She left camp in great sorrow for she was pregnant. Eventually she gave birth to six puppies and concealed them in a sack because she was ashamed of them, although she loved them.

One day, on returning from inspecting her snares, she noticed children's footprints. "What's this, there are only puppies in the sack, not children?" The next day she again went to her snares and again found children's footprints on returning. "It's definitely my children who are making these footprints," she said. "In daylight my children are human but when they go back in the darkness they become puppies again. I know what I am going to do."

She tied a rope to the bag and went off down the path. As she left she called, "Children, Mummy is going to look for some white hare for you." But she hung onto the rope and waited behind a bush close to the tent.

Soon she could hear the puppies talking, "Mother's gone, let's go out and play." Then a puppy came out of the sack. He took a deep breath and suddenly became a little boy. Another and another followed until at last there were three boys and three girls. They danced and played in the tent, and delighted their mother.

She decided that they would never return to the sack because they were really human, so she pulled the rope to close the sack. But before she succeeded three of the children re-entered the sack and turned back into puppies. Two boys and a girl remained outside the sack, though.

The woman rushed to embrace her human babies. She was very happy and made clothes for them out of hareskin and raised them to adulthood.

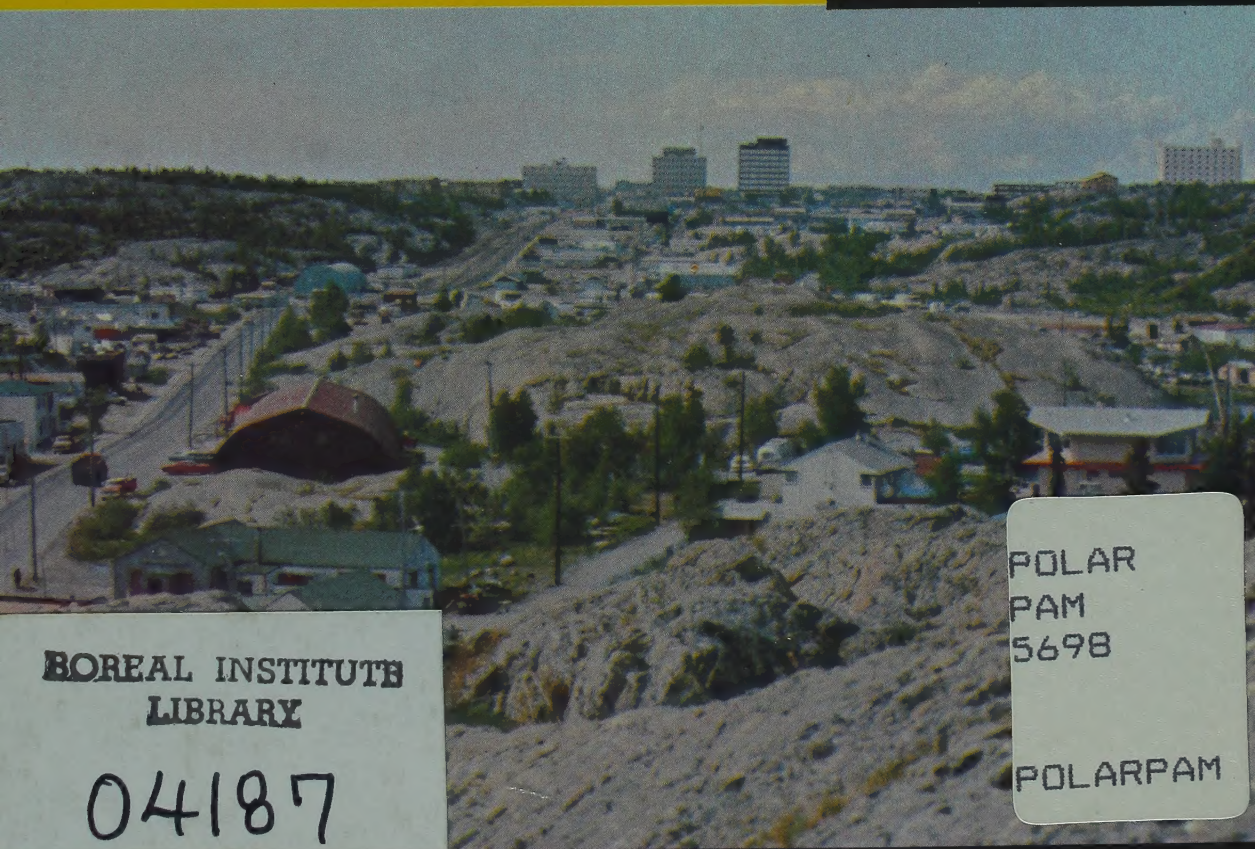
The two brothers were very strong and seemed to have magical powers. They always made sure there was a good supply of meat. One day they decided to go to their uncles. The uncles accepted them proudly when they saw what fine strong young men they had become.

These two married their sister and produced many children.

We are descended from them and that is why we call ourselves the Dogrib.

Yellowknife

at a
glance



**BOREAL INSTITUTE
LIBRARY**

04187

POLAR
PAM
5698

POLARPAM

ACCOMMODATION

Explorer Hotel	120 rooms
phone 403 - 873-3531, Telex 034-45582	
Yellowknife Inn	162 rooms
phone 403 - 873-2601, Telex 034-45524	
Gold Range Hotel	52 rooms
phone 403 - 873-4441	
Twin Pine Motor Inn	44 units
phone 403 - 873-8511	
Frontier Inn	9 units
phone 403 - 873-4500	
Northland Motel	11 units
phone 403 - 873-2781	

TRANSPORTATION

Air: Airport and float base.
Scheduled interprovincial airlines:
Pacific Western (Edmonton and points north),
Transair (Winnipeg and Whitehorse)
For detailed information on local and charter airlines, see Current Explorers Guide published by TravelArctic, Yellowknife, N.W.T.

Road: Mackenzie Highway all weather gravel road connection with Edmonton. Bus service three times weekly. Road closed up to a month during breakup and freezeup of Mackenzie River (ferry service summer, ice road winter). Five transport firms, taxi service, local bus service, four car rental firms.

Water: NTCL from Hay River, June to October, freight only.



View from the Pilot's Monument, Old Town, in winter. photo R. Heming, Outcrop Ltd

PEOPLE

Population 1978 (estimated)	10,900
1968	4,675
Trading Area Population 1977 (estimated)	21,000
1967 (estimated)	9,000

LAND

Area of City of Yellowknife	13,857 hectares (34,240 acres)
Industrial Area	162 hectares (200 acres)

LOCATION

62° 28' N. 114° 26' W.		
Yellowknife Bay, North Arm, Great Slave Lake		
Distances by road:		
Edmonton	947 miles	1,524 km.
Winnipeg	1,782 miles	2,867 km.
Vancouver	1,498 miles	2,410 km.
Toronto	3,086 miles	4,965 km.
Edmonton by air	600 miles	965 km.
South of		
Arctic Circle	275 miles	442 km.

CLIMATE

Yellowknife enjoys a dry climate. Annual precipitation averages about 250 mm. (10 inches), about 140 mm. rain, 110 cm. snow.
Temperatures vary between a January minimum of below 40° Celsius and a July maximum of around + 30° Celsius.
Mean daily temperatures:

January	April	July	October
-28	-7	+16	-1

Daylight is reduced to about six hours in depth of winter but in June the midnight sun makes possible the Midnight Marathon Golf Tournament which lasts 36 hours nonstop.

PUBLICATIONS

News of the North, tri-weekly newspaper, Monday, Wednesday, Friday. The Yellowknifer, weekly newspaper, Thursday. Native Press, newspaper every other week. Arctic in Colour, news magazine about the North, published by Northern News Services four times a year.

COMMUNICATIONS

CFYK Radio acts as base for Mackenzie network. (AM)
CBC Television provides relay service via ANIK satellite Vancouver (CBUT).
Mackenzie Media provides live local television via cable in addition to videotapes from independent television from the south. Continuous music FM program is also provided.
C.N. Telecommunications provides local and long distance telephone, telegraph and telex facilities.

DINING OUT

There is a wide variety of eating establishments, ranging from full-service dining lounges to pizza houses, Chinese food to fast-food outlets, and a full complement of fast-food and "take-out" outlets catering to all tastes.

BANKING

The five major chartered Canadian banks all have branches in the downtown area, and as well the Federal Business Development Bank maintains an office in Yellowknife.

CALENDAR OF EVENTS

Caribou Carnival and the Canadian Championship Dog Derby are held the last full week in March.
Sportsman's Spiel, the largest bonspiel north of 60 is held over the Easter weekend. This event is limited to 80 rinks and has a prize money of \$12,000 (1977).
The Midnight Golf Tournament is held on the weekend closest to June 21st. In conjunction with the tournament, Midnight March takes place downtown, with all the commercial establishments open from 10:00 p.m. to 1:00 a.m.
Canada Day activities include a parade and fastball tournament with a full range of water activities taking place at Long Lake and McNiven Beach.
County Fair North of 60 is held on the Labour Day weekend.